



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

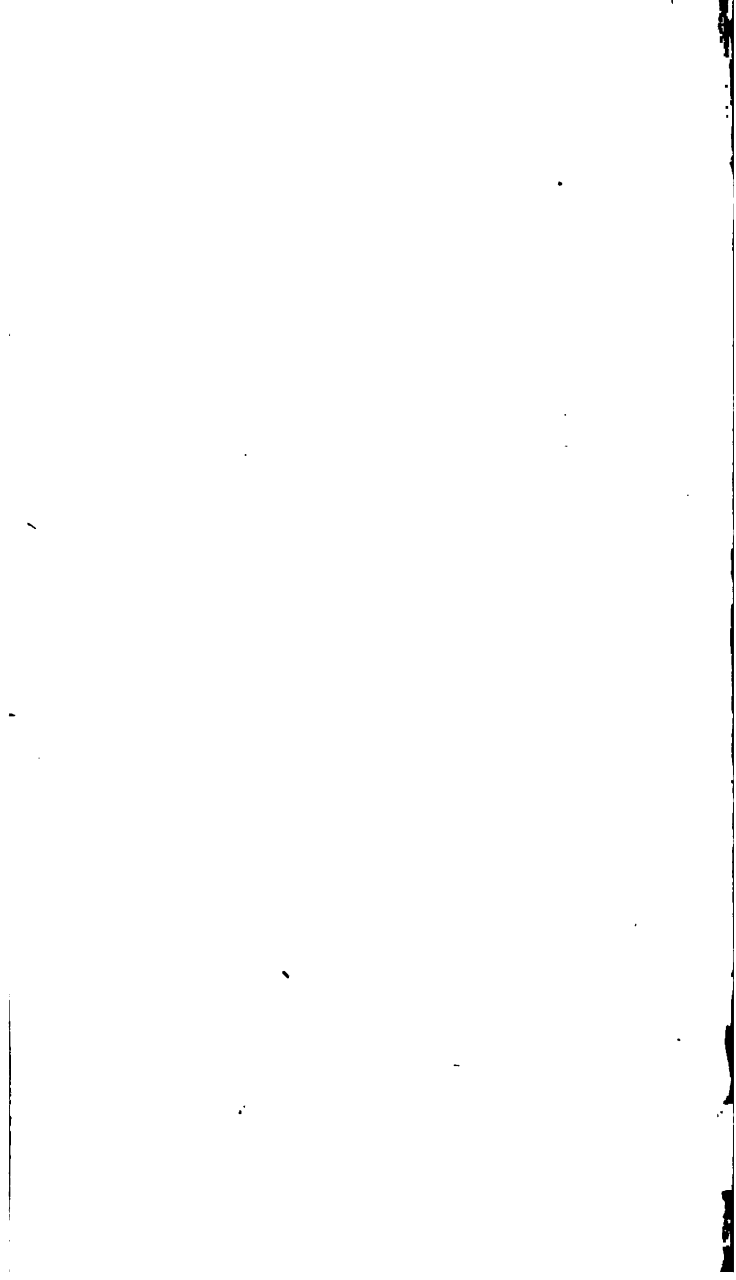
NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08159425 5

Key-Notes
P. A. L.

Keyhole
P.A.



Ad 6/-

—

Vergasiera
BA





Mathurin Veysière
T A de Lacroze

HISTORICAL GRAMMAR;

OR A

CHRONOLOGICAL ABRIDGMENT

OF

UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

TO WHICH IS ADDED, AN

ABRIDGED CHRONOLOGY

OF THE MOST REMARKABLE

DISCOVERIES AND INVENTIONS

RELATIVE TO THE

ARTS AND SCIENCES, &c.

Designed principally for the use of Schools and Academies.

*Translated, by LUCY PEACOCK, from the 7th edition of the
French of LA CROZE. Revised, Corrected,
and greatly Enlarged,*

By CALEB BINGHAM, A. M.

Author of the Columbian Orator, American Preceptor, &c.

SECOND EDITION.

[*Published according to Act of Congress.*]

BOSTON:

PRINTED BY DAVID GARLICK,

For CALEB BINGHAM, No. 44, Cornhill.

1808.

TO NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

158548A

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

R 1924 L

THE TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

A PERUSAL of La Croze's Chronologic Abridgment, in the original language, induced the translator to believe that it would prove a useful acquisition to the English Seminary. In historical reading, repeated interrogatories are necessary to excite recollection and preserve unbroken that regular series which should be formed in the mind. Much may be done in this way by the well informed tutor, who, in the quiet retreat of a private family, has leisure to watch the gradual progress of the pupil, and, as occasion shall require, to supply all that is wanting from his own store. But in large seminaries, where the number of pupils is multiplied, and an extensive field of instruction usually embraced, the labour of the tutor must be abridged; and here works in the form of question and answer seem peculiarly advantageous.

PREFACE.

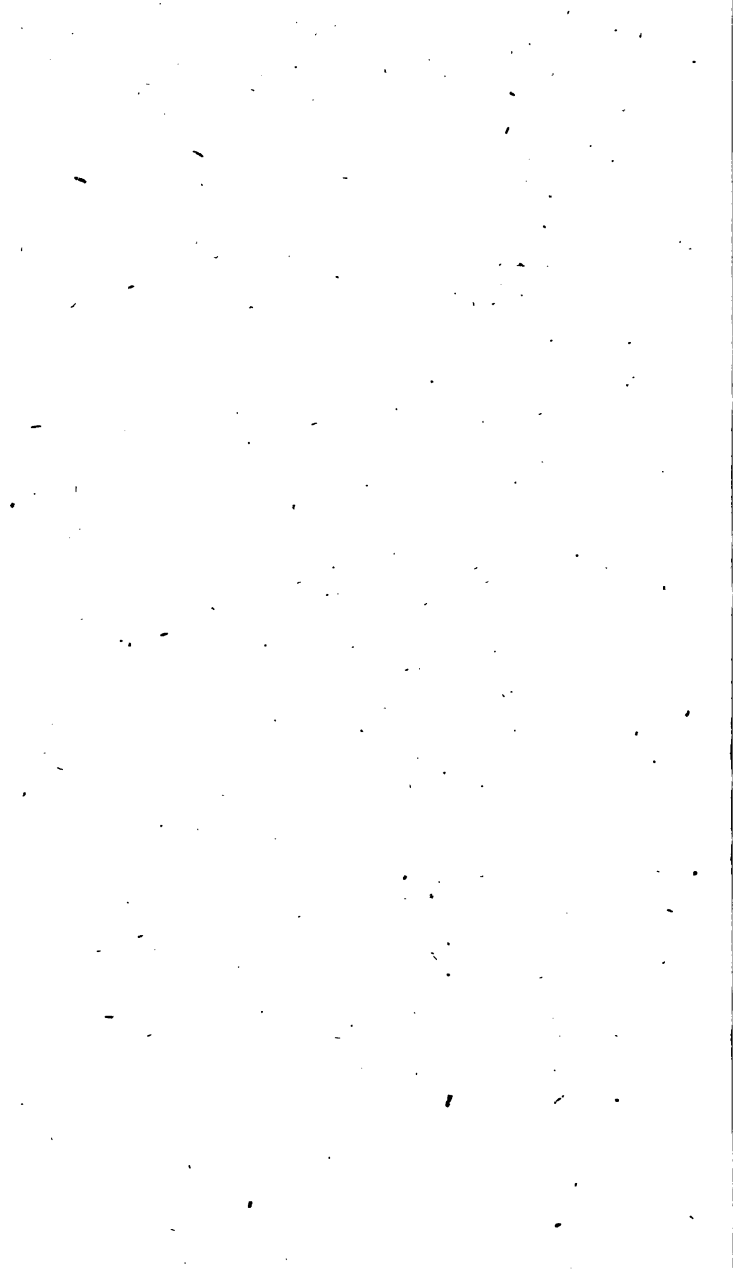
The division⁵ of the present abridgment by periods, epochs, and centuries, exempts it from the charge of a disjointed chronology, which has been considered as an objection to works written in this form. It exhibits a regular chronological series from the creation to the present time, and the Translator presumes may be used with advantage, as preparatory to more extensive reading; as a memento of knowledge previously attained, or as a guide to that arrangement, without which a perusal of the most voluminous works will tend only to perplex and mislead. Works of this kind cannot properly be considered in any other light than as elementary. The information they contain comprehends little more than names and dates; and if the labour of the pupil be supposed to end here, his historical acquisitions will prove of small importance. But though not competent to form the judgment, they are useful to exercise the memory.

An author* to whom the present age is highly indebted, speaking of education in general, thus expresses himself: "Let but a solid foundation be laid, of those elemental parts

* Dr. AINSWORTH.

of learning which employ the memory when that is the only faculty in full vigour, and it is immaterial how slight is the superstructure first erected. I would wish it rather to resemble the scaffolding of a great building than the finished model of a small one."

The number of editions this work has passed through is a sufficient testimony of the approbation with which it has been received on the Continent. Many additions have been made since its first publication. The Translator has only to express her wish, that the work, in its English dress, may equal the idea she has formed of its utility.



CONTENTS.

Page.

General principles of History

9

PART I.

FIRST PERIOD.

From the Creation of the World to the Deluge,
1656 Years.

13

SECOND PERIOD.

From the Deluge to the Calling of Abraham,
366 Years.

13

THIRD PERIOD.

From the Calling of Abraham to the Law given
by Moses, 431 Years

14

FOURTH PERIOD.

From the Law given by Moses to the taking of
Troy, 347 Years

15

FIFTH PERIOD.

From the taking of Troy to the building of the
Temple of Jerusalem by Solomon, 192 Years

17

SIXTH PERIOD.

From the building of the Temple of Jerusalem to
the Foundation of Rome, 239 Years

18

SEVENTH PERIOD.

From the Foundation of Rome till the beginning
of the Reign of Cyrus, 192 Years

20

EIGHTH PERIOD.

From Cyrus, first King of the Persians, to the
Birth of Jesus Christ, 560 Years

27

PART II.

Divisions

32

FIRST PERIOD.

From the Birth of Jesus Christ to the Conversion
of Constantine, 312 Years

35

Century I.

36

Century II.

60

CONTENTS.

Century III.	-	-	-	Page 67
Century IV.	-	-	-	78

SECOND PERIOD.

From the Conversion of Constantine to the Coronation of Charlemagne, 488 Years	-	-	-	80
Century V.	-	-	-	86
Century VI.	-	-	-	95
Century VII.	-	-	-	1007

PART III.

Century VIII.	-	-	-	105
---------------	---	---	---	-----

THIRD PERIOD.

From the Coronation of Charlemagne to the Reign of Henry the Fowler, 120 Years	-	-	-	111
Century IX.	-	-	-	112
Century X.	-	-	-	115

FOURTH PERIOD.

From the Reign of Henry the Fowler to the Election of Rodolphus, Count of Hapsburg, 363 Years	-	-	-	116
Century XI.	-	-	-	120
Century XII.	-	-	-	125
Century XIII.	-	-	-	129

FIFTH PERIOD.

From the Election of Rodolphus, Count of Hapsburg, to Frederick I. Elector of Brandenburg, 144 Years	-	-	-	133
Century XIV.	-	-	-	135
Century XV.	-	-	-	140

SIXTH PERIOD.

From Frederick I. Elector of Brandenburg, to the Peace of Teschen, concluded May 13, 1779, 362 Years	-	-	-	141
Century XVI.	-	-	-	151
Century XVII.	-	-	-	162
Century XVIII.	-	-	-	171
Abridged Chronology of Discoveries, &c.	-	-	-	187
Eminent and Remarkable Persons	-	-	-	208

INTRODUCTION.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF HISTORY.

Q. What is history?

A. A recital of what has occurred since the creation of the world.

Q. What is necessary to the study of history?

A. A knowledge of geography, which teaches the situation of the places in which the events happened, and also of chronology, which is the science of time.

Q. How is history divided?

A. Into *sacred* and *profane*. The first is contained in the Old and New Testament, and the last in all other records of antiquity.

Q. How is sacred history divided?

A. Into three parts. The dispensation of the law of nature, extending from Adam to Moses; the dispensation of the written law, from Moses to our Lord Jesus Christ; and the dispensation of grace, which comprehends the time from the establishment of the gospel.

Q. How is profane history divided?

A. Generally into three great intervals; obscure or uncertain time; fabulous or heroical time, and historical time.

Q. What is meant by obscure or uncertain time?

A. That which elapsed from the creation of the world to the origin of the Grecian fables, or to the del.

INTRODUCTION.

age, which happened in the days of Ogyges, King of Athens. As history has left us in great ignorance of this remote period, it is on that account called obscure and uncertain.

Q. What is meant by fabulous time?

A. That which elapsed from the deluge of Ogyges to the establishment of the Olympic Games. It is called fabulous or heroical, because the heroes and demi gods of the Greeks are pretended to have lived during this period.

Q. What is meant by historical time?

A. That which extends from the Olympic Games when history began to be more authentic, to the present time.

Q. Are there not other divisions necessary to the study of universal history?

A. Those by epochs and periods are the most convenient, and the most generally used.

Q. What is an epocha?

A. An epocha is some remarkable event, made use of to fix the order of time, and to assist the memory.

Q. What is a period?

A. The succession of events from one epocha to another.

Q. How are these epochas and periods disposed?

A. The order is entirely arbitrary. It will be sufficient here to enumerate eight from the creation of the world to the birth of Jesus Christ.

Q. Name the epochas?

A. I. The deluge. II. The calling of Abraham. III. The law given by Moses. IV. The taking of Troy by the Greeks. V. The building of the Temple of Jerusalem by Solomon. VI. The foundation of Rome. VII. Cyrus, King of Persia. VIII. The birth of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Q. What are the periods?

<i>A.</i> The first is from the creation of the world to the deluge, about	<i>Years.</i> 1658
The second from the deluge to the calling of Abraham	368
The third from the calling of Abraham to the law given by Moses	438
The fourth from the law given by Moses to the taking of Troy	547
The fifth from the taking of Troy to the building of the Temple of Jerusalem by Solomon	192
The sixth from the building of the Temple of Jerusalem to the foundation of Rome	259
The seventh from the foundation of Rome to the beginning of the reign of Cyrus, the first King of Persia	192
The eighth from Cyrus to the birth of our Lord Jesus Christ	560

Q. Is not the duration of the world divided also into four great monarchies?

A. Yes; it is an ancient division, and not without its use.

Q. Which are those monarchies?

A. The Assyrian, the Persian, the Grecian, and the Roman.

Q. What is a monarchy?

A. A state governed, according to its laws, by one individual.

Q. How are the other forms of government called?

A. That where the people have the legislative power, and where the executive power of the laws is confided to magistrates, is called *democracy*; and that where the governing power is in the hands of the nobles, as at Venice, before the late revolution, bears the name of *aristocracy*.

Q. Are the four of which you have just spoken the only great monarchies of antiquity?

A. By no means. History acquaints us with others which were not less considerable.

Q. Name some of them?

A. The Egyptian was of very great extent. The Chinese is one of the most ancient. The Parthian for a long time made head against the Romans; and *Gengiskan*, the conquering Tartar, in the thirteenth century established the most extensive empire in the known world.

Q. How far did it extend?

A. From China to Hungary; but its duration was short.

HISTORICAL GRAMMAR.

FIRST PERIOD.

FROM THE CREATION OF THE WORLD TO THE DELUGE.
1656 YEARS.

Q. **W**HENCE do we acquire a knowledge of the events of this period ?

A. They are contained in the first chapters of the Book of Genesis.

Q. What are the events there recorded ?

A. The creation of the world ; the fall of Adam and Eve ; the murder of Abel by Cain, his brother ; Enoch translated to Heaven, on account of his piety ; the corruption of mankind, and the deluge announced to Noah, twenty five years before it happened.

SECOND PERIOD.

FROM THE DELUGE TO THE CALLING OF ABRAHAM.
366 YEARS.

Q. What are the events of this period ?

A. The Deluge ; the building of the Tower of Babel, and the foundation of the Assyrian empire by Nimrod. The kingdom of Egypt was also, it appears by holy writ, founded in this period.

B

Q. What was the name of the first king of Egypt ?

A. He was called *Menes*, and was, it is conjectured, Misraim, the son of *Ham*, one of the sons of Noah.

Q. What other events occur in this period ?

A. The construction of the Egyptian Pyramids, which are reckoned among the seven wonders of the world, and are the only remains of those wonders that still exist.

Q. What other empire flourished in this period ?

A. The empire of China, which, by a long succession of kings, has been preserved till the present day ; and contains, according to the opinion of some judicious writers, at least one third of all the inhabitants on the globe.

Q. Who was its founder ?

A. He was called *Fohi*.*

Q. Was idolatry established during this period ?

A. The children of Noah, in the beginning of it, preserved the worship of the true God ; but afterwards the morals of men became altogether corrupt ; and superstition introduced idolatry.

THIRD PERIOD.

FROM THE CALLING OF ABRAHAM TO THE LAW GIVEN
BY MOSES.—431 YEARS.

Q. Why did God call Abraham ?

A. To preserve him and his descendants from the idolatry that was universally diffused throughout the world.

Q. What were the remarkable events that occurred during this period ?

A. The birth of *Ismael*, from whom descend the people called Arabs ; that of *Isaac*, *Jacob*, and *Esau*, with several other remarkable events recorded in the holy Scriptures ; such as the selling of *Joseph* by his brethren ; the removal of *Jacob* into Egypt ; the persecution of the *Israelites* under *Pharaoh*, and their retreat out of Egypt.

* The Chinese reckon much earlier, and pretend to have existed, not only antecedent to the deluge, but even to the creation : nothing certain, however, appears in their annals till the time of *Pohi*.

Q. Did no remarkable events occur during this period in profane History?

A. Yes; Inachus arrived in Peloponnesus, now called the Morea, where he founded the kingdom of Argos.

Q. From what country did *Inachus* come?

A. It is thought he came from Phenicia, the people of that country being the first who practised navigation, and established colonies in distant countries.

Q. What other events happened in profane History?

A. The deluge of *Ogyges* in Attica, and that of *Deucalion* in Thessaly.

Q. Are these deluges considered as true events?

A. Yes; so far as relates to the simple facts; but with each, especially with the last, several circumstances are blended, borrowed from the universal deluge, beside many absurd fables without foundation.

FOURTH PERIOD.

FROM THE LAW GIVEN BY MOSES TO THE TAKING OF
TROY.—347 YEARS.

Q. What form of government did God establish by Moses in the desert?

A. It was a government of a very peculiar nature, God was himself the king of his people: this form of government is therefore called Theocracy, or the empire of God.

Q. Who conducted the people of God into the holy land?

A. *Joshua*, the successor of Moses, who divided Palestine among the twelve tribes, and died twelve years after.

Q. How were his successors called?

A. They were called Judges, a name common to the magistrates of the Jews, till the time of Saul, who was their first king.

Q. What kingdoms were founded during this period?

A. Those of Thebes, Assyria, Troy, and Peloponnesus.

Q. Who founded the kingdom of Thebes ?

A. Cadmus, a Phenician, whose history is much obscured by the fictions of the poets. He is said to have been the first who brought letters into Greece.

Q. Who was the founder of the Assyrian empire ?

A. *Belus* ; to whom succeeded *Ninus*, who founded the city of Nineveh, and was husband to the celebrated Queen *Semiramis*.

Q. Who founded the kingdom of Troy ?

A. *Dardanus*, a Phrygian ; his successor was *Troas*, to whom succeeded *Affaracus* ; and next *Laomedon*, the father of *Priam*, under whose reign the Greeks took Troy.

Q. What was the cause of the siege of this city ?

A. The flight of *Helen*, the wife of *Menelaus*, King of Sparta, with *Paris*, the son of *Priam*.

Q. Who was the chief of the Grecian army during this expedition ?

A. *Agamemnon*, the brother of *Menelaus*, and king of Mycenæ.

Q. Who founded the kingdom of Athens ?

A. *Cecrops*, an Egyptian, who settled there at the head of a colony of his own nation.

Q. What other events relate to this period ?

A. Several, as well in sacred as in profane History.

Q. Repeat those that relate to sacred History.

A. They are contained in the Book of *Joshua*, and also in that of *Judges*, from *Othniel* to *Jephthah*.

Q. What are the events relative to profane History ?

A. They belong chiefly to mythology. The principal are the birth and life of *Hercules*, who was born at Thebes, and was the son of *Alcmene*, the wife of *Amphytrion* ; and the expedition of the *Argonauts*, at the head of which was *Jasón*. The history, or rather the fable, at large, is to be found in *Ovid's Metamorphoses*.

Q. Are these all the events that relate to this period ?

A. One still remains, which is much celebrated in antiquity : the history of *Edipus*, king of Thebes, and of his two sons, *Eteocles* and *Polynices*.

FIFTH PERIOD.

FROM THE TAKING OF TROY TO THE BUILDING OF THE TEMPLE OF JERUSALEM BY SOLOMON.—192 YEARS.

Q. How many years did the siege of Troy continue?

A. It continued ten years, at the end of which it was taken and razed to the foundation.

Q. What became of the Trojan princes?

A. Those who survived the siege, as Hector and Paris, the sons of Priam, were partly massacred, and partly carried into captivity.

Q. Did none escape?

A. Two only are mentioned: *Antenor*, who is supposed to be the founder of the city of Padua; and *Eneas*, who went into Italy, and married *Lavinia*, the daughter of king *Latinus*.

Q. Who was *Eneas*?

A. He was the son of *Anchises*, the brother of king Priam, and, according to the fables of the poets, of the goddess *Venus*.

Q. Had he any children?

A. He had a son named *Ascanius*, who founded the city and kingdom of *Alba Longa*, in the territory of *Latium*.

Q. In what situation were the affairs of Greece at this time?

A. A great revolution had taken place in Peloponnesus. The former kings, as *Agamemnon* and *Menelaus*, were of the race of *Pelops*, a Phrygian, the son of *Tantalus*, who, having settled in the Peninsula, gave it the name of *Peloponnesus*, which signifies the Isle of *Pelops*. To these princes succeeded the *Heracleids*, or descendants of *Hercules*, who founded the kingdoms of *Lacedæmon* and *Corinth*.

Q. Did the kingdom of Athens continue to exist?

A. It ended in this period; the last king was *Codrus*, who for the preservation of his country, voluntarily devoted himself to death.

Q. What were the consequences of this event ?

A. The two sons of *Codrus*, disputing for the crown, the Athenians, to avoid similar differences, abolished the regal dignity, and elected magistrates, whose power was indeed for life, but dependent on the people : they were called Archons, a word which signifies princes or lords.

Q. Did the Greeks effect nothing more during this period ?

A. They sent colonies into Asia Minor, where they founded several cities, the most celebrated among which were Ephesus, Smyrna, Cumæ, and Phocis.

Q. What are the events of sacred History ?

A. The end of the magistracy of the Judges, which had continued from Jephthah to Saul, who was succeeded by David.

SIXTH PERIOD

FROM THE BUILDING OF THE TEMPLE OF JERUSALEM
TO THE FOUNDATION OF ROME.—239 YEARS.

Q. At what time was the Temple of Jerusalem built ?

A. It was built nine hundred and ninety two years before the birth of our Lord Jesus Christ, and in the year of the world two thousand nine hundred and ninety two.

Q. Why did not David build the Temple of Jerusalem ?

A. God forbade him, because he had shed human blood ; and *Solomon*, his son, who was a pacific prince, was chosen to undertake and execute this great work.

Q. What remarkable events happened during the reign of *Solomon* ?

A. Three may be especially enumerated. First, the wisdom bestowed by God upon that prince, at his own request. Secondly, the worship of God established in a fixed place. Thirdly, the removal of the ark of the covenant into the Temple ; and lastly, the riches and power

of Solomon, who considerably increased the glory of the kingdom of Israel.

Q Who were the kings with whom Solomon had transactions?

A The Scriptures only mention the kings of Egypt and Tyre, and the queen of Sheba.

Q Who was the king of Egypt?

A He is called in the sacred volumes *Pharaoh*, a name common to the kings of Egypt; and it is added, that Solomon married one of his daughters.

Q By what name is the king of Tyre distinguished?

A He is called *Hiram*, and we are told that he lived in strict amity with Solomon, whom he supplied with materials and workmen to build the temple of Jerusalem.

Q What account is given of the queen of Sheba?

A The sacred writings do not mention her name, but the ancient annals of Ethiopia inform us that she was called *Makeda*. She came with a grand retinue to Jerusalem, attracted by the fame of Solomon; and returned into her own country, filled with admiration of his wisdom and magnificence, saying that the half was not told her.

Q In what part of the world did this princess reign?

A In Arabia Felix, where the kingdom of Sheba or Saba is situated. The history of that country asserts that the queen had a son by Solomon.

Q But is it not extraordinary that the reputation of Solomon should reach a country so remote?

A It is probable that the queen gained her information from the ships which this prince, in conjunction with *Hiram*, king of Tyre, sent to Ophir in search of gold and other precious things.

Q What courie did these vessels take?

A They departed from the port of *Afongaber*, on the Northern coast of the Red Sea, and sailing Southward, coasted Arabia Felix till they came to the Strait, which is now called Babel-Mandeb.

Q Where is the country of Ophir situated?

A It is supposed to be that which is now called the kingdom of Sofala on the Eastern coast of Africa.

Q On what is this opinion founded?

A. On the quantity of gold which is still found in those districts, and on the magnificent ruins which the natives call the works of Solomon.

Q. Does profane History make mention of any person who appears to have been a cotemporary with Solomon?

A. It is thought that the poet *Homer* lived in Greece during his reign.

Q. Who was *Homer*?

A. He is better known by his writings than by his person or country, with both of which we are but little acquainted.

Q. What are the writings to which you allude?

A. Two incomparable poems written in Greek. The first, the *Iliad*, which contains a poetical description of the Trojan war; and the second, the *Odyssey*, in which is described the return of Ulysses into the Isle of Ithaca, his native country, after the taking of Troy.*

Q. Was the reign of Solomon as glorious towards the conclusion, as it was at the beginning?

A. By no means; he fell into the most shameful excesses and criminal idolatry; of which there is reason to presume, by his writings, he repented before his death, though the sacred volumes are silent on the subject.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. His son Rehoboam, who, having imprudently preferred the advice of inexperienced young men to the more salutary counsels of age, lost the half of his kingdom, which revolted from him.

Q. Who was the author of this revolt?

A. *Jeroboam*, the son of *Nebat*, who drew ten tribes of Israel to his party, and who, to prevent the Jews adoring God at Jerusalem, set up two golden calves, which he obliged the ten revolted tribes to acknowledge as the object of their worship.

Q. Did this division subsist long?

A. Till the Jews were carried captive into Babylon, there were kings of Jerusalem over the tribes of Judah and Benjamin; and also other kings at Samaria, over the ten Schismatic tribes.

* These poems are beautifully translated into English by Mr. Pope.

Q. Did the kings of Tyre exist any length of time?

A. They existed till the destruction of their city by *Nebuchadnezzar*; and till the time of *Abia*, grandson of Solomon, and son of Rehoboam, king of Judah; or, according to others, till the time of Joram, king of Israel. Among the kings of Tyre was one known in history by the name of *Pygmalion*.

Q. Does any remarkable event preserve the memory of this prince?

A. Yes; the foundation of Carthage by *Dido*, a Tyrian princess, who, flying from the cruelty of *Pygmalion*, her brother, went into Africa with a numerous train, and there founded that great city, near three hundred years after the taking of Troy.*

Q. Are there no events in the history of Greece which may be considered as belonging to this period?

A. Among a variety of others, two are particularly memorable: the change effected at Lacedæmon by the laws of *Lycurgus*, and the foundation of the kingdom of Macedon, by *Caranus*, a descendant of Hercules, and a native of Argos.

Q. Did these events happen precisely at the same time?

A. No; an interval of seventy years elapsed between them. *Lycurgus*, the Spartan lawgiver, flourished eight hundred and eighty four years before Christ; and *Caranus* founded the kingdom of Macedon eight hundred and fourteen years before the same æra.

Q. Was there no other empire founded during this period?

A. The empire of the Medes was founded by *Deioces*, and subsisted till *Cyrus*, who subdued not only the Medes but all the other Eastern States.

Q. Had the Greeks, during this time, any method of fixing the dates of their history by epochas and periods?

* Virgil, who, among the Latin poets, holds the same rank as Homer among the Greek, has embellished his celebrated poem of the *Æneid* by representing *Dido* as cotemporary with *Æneas*, though a long interval must have elapsed from the time of the Trojan war to the days of that prince.

A. Till the period of which we are now speaking, it does not appear that they had; but seven hundred and seventy six years before the birth of our Lord, they instituted a famous solemnity, which they afterwards made use of to compute the number of their years, and to date the events of their history.

Q. What was this solemnity?

A. The *Olympic Games*, which were celebrated every fifth year at Olympia in Elis, a small province of Peloponnesus, with the universal concurrence of all Greece.

Q. Describe these Games.

A. They consisted in various exercises of the mental and bodily powers. The victors were publicly crowned, an honour which gained them particular privileges during life.

Q. How did the Greeks compute the number of their years by the Olympic Games?

A. They gave the name of *Olympiad* to four entire years, which elapsed from one solemnity to another, and referred the events, first to the Olympiad, and secondly to the current year of the same Olympiad.

Q. Explain this more clearly by some examples?

A. I will take two from the period in which we now are. About the second year of the second Olympiad, the Greeks sent colonies into Sicily, conducted by *Archias*, a Corinthian, who built the city of Syracuse. The fourth year of the fifth Olympiad, the Athenians decreed that the Archons, who, from the death of Codrus, had held their office for life, should resign it at the end of ten years.*

SEVENTH PERIOD.

FROM THE FOUNDATION OF ROME TO THE BEGINNING
OF THE REIGN OF CYRUS.—192 YEARS.

Q. At what time was the city of Rome founded?

A. At the beginning of the third year of the fifth O-

* Rollin's Ancient History begins at this time.

lympiad, in the year of the world three thousand two hundred and thirty one, and seven hundred and fifty three years before the birth of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Q. Who was the founder of that city ?

A. *Romulus*, the grandson of *Numitor*, king of *Alba Longa*, by his daughter *Rhea Sylvia*, a vestal. His father was apparently a stranger; and the Romans, to conceal the ignominy of their hero's birth, invented the story that he was the son of the god *Mars*.

Q. Had not *Romulus* a twin brother ?

A. Yes; he had one, named *Remus*, whom he killed with his own hand.

Q. What was the cause of his committing so great a crime ?

A. His brother in derision leaped over the ditch which was dug for the foundation of the city walls.

Q. Who were the first inhabitants of Rome ?

A. Criminals, outlaws, and fugitive slaves, to whom *Romulus* offered an asylum in order to people it.

Q. Had they no women among them ?

A. No; the *Sabines*, their neighbours, whose daughters they asked in marriage, refused them with contempt.

Q. What was the consequence of their refusal ?

A. *Romulus* dissembled his resentment, and some time after, celebrated games, to which they invited the *Sabine* ladies; they ran thither in crowds with their daughters, who were immediately seized and forcibly carried away to Rome, where they became the wives of the subjects of *Romulus*.

Q. This no doubt produced a war ?

A. It did; but of no long continuance, from the prudence of the *Roman* women, who reconciled their fathers and husbands by their entreaties, and prevailed on them to become one nation.

Q. How many years did *Romulus* reign, and who was his successor ?

A. He reigned thirty eight years, and was succeeded by *Numa Pompilius*, a *Sabine*, born in the city of *Cures*.

Q. What was the character of these princes ?

A. *Romulus* was enterprising and warlike; *Numa* pacific, religious, and a wise politician.

Q. In what state were the affairs of the Jews at this time ?

A. About the twentieth year of Rome, Hezekiah began to reign at Jerusalem ; and in the seventh year of his reign, *Salmanasar*, king of Assyria, took the city of Samaria, and carried *Hoshea*, king of Israel, and the ten Schismatic tribes, into captivity.

Q. Did the kingdom of Judah still subsist ?

A. Yes ; and a short time after the taking of Samaria, *Senacherib*, king of Assyria, entered Judea with that immense army which was miraculously defeated by an Angel.

Q. Let us now return to the Romans. How long did *Numa Pompilius* reign ?

A. He reigned forty three years, and was succeeded by *Tullus Hostilius*, who reigned twenty three.

Q. You have in the preceding period spoken of the empire of the Medes ; in what manner was it founded ?

A. *Arbaces*, a Median Lord, having revolted from *Sardanapalus*, king of Assyria, a weak and effeminate prince, whom he reduced to the necessity of putting a period to his existence, the Medes threw off the yoke of the Assyrians, and asserted their independence.

Q. Did *Arbaces* bear the name of king ?

A. No ; the Medes having for some time enjoyed their liberty, elected for their king a Lord, named *Deioces*, whose posterity preserved that rank till the time of *Cyrus*, king of Persia.

Q. How were the affairs of Greece at this period ?

A. In the sixty seventh year of Rome, the office of Archon at Athens became annual, and continued so till the fall of that Republic.

Q. Did the Lacedæmonians continue to observe the laws of *Lycurgus* ?

A. Yes ; and as their form of government was wholly military, they had frequent wars with the other cities of Greece.

Q. In what particular contests were they engaged at this time ?

A. They had a long war with the Messenians, their neighbours, and after a siege of ten years, took their city.

Q. What became of the Messenians ?

A. Those who escaped the cruelty of the Lacedæmonians sailed into Sicily, where they rendered themselves masters of a city called Zanclea, to which they gave the name of Messina, in honor to their native country.

Q. Who was the fourth king of Rome ?

A. *Ancus Martius*, who succeeded *Tullus Hostilius*, and began to reign one hundred and fifteen years after the foundation of Rome. He died after a reign of twenty four years.

Q. Did no illustrious characters exist among the Greeks ?

A. The seven sages of Greece are placed in this period.

Q. Does history acquaint us with their names ?

A. Yes. 1. Solon, the Legislator of Athens. 2. Thales, of Meletus. 3. Periander, king of Corinth. 4. Pittacus, king of Mitylene. 5. Bias, a Prienian. 6. Chilo, the Lacedæmonian. 7. Cleobulus, the Indian.

Q. In what did the wisdom of these Sages consist ?

A. In a strict observance of the precepts of natural and moral law.

Q. Who were the successors of *Deioces*, the first king of the Medes ?

A. Media had only four kings, who followed in hereditary succession during the space of one hundred and fifty years.

Q. Who were they ?

A. *Deioces*, who reigned fifty three years ; *Phraotes*, who reigned twenty two ; *Cyaxares*, who reigned forty ; and *Astyages*, grandfather, by the mother, to *Cyrus*, who reigned thirty five years.

Q. Did no other empire flourish in the East at this time ?

A. That of the Babylonians was very powerful, and *Nebuchadnezzar*, the son of *Nabopolassar*, king of Babylon, made great conquests, among which are comprised those of Jerusalem and of Palestine.

Q. At what time did the conquest of Jerusalem and the destruction of the Temple happen ?

A. About one hundred and sixty years after the

foundation of Rome, and five hundred and eighty years before the birth of Jesus Christ.

Q. Who reigned at this time in Rome ?

A. Tarquin I. the fifth king of the Romans. He reigned thirty eight years.

Q. Of what family was Tarquin ?

A. He was of Greek extraction, the son of a Corinthian, named *Demaratus*, who took refuge at Tarquinii, in Tuscany, from the persecution of *Cypselus*, tyrant of Corinth.

Q. What was the end of Tarquin ?

A. At the age of eighty four he was assassinated by two peasants, instigated by the children of *Ancus Martius*.

Q. What motive prompted them to so execrable a deed ?

A. The hatred they had conceived to the king, from the idea that he possessed a crown which by right belonged to them.

Q. Who was his successor ?

A. *Servius Tullius*, who had been brought up by *Tanquil*, the wife of Tarquin, whose daughter he married.

Q. What were Nebuchadnezzar's most considerable conquests, exclusive of those of Syria and Palestine ?

A. He subdued Egypt, and rendered it tributary.

Q. Who was his successor ?

A. His son, *Evilmerodach*, who reigned only three years.

Q. Did the kingdom of Babylon maintain its power after the death of *Nebuchadnezzar* ?

A. No ; the succeeding princes, little known in history, effected nothing memorable ; and *Cyrus*, the founder of the great Persian monarchy, a short time after, subdued the Babylonians.

Q. How did *Cyrus* take Babylon ?

A. He turned the course of the river *Tygris*, which ran through the city, and marched his army under the walls, in its channel. This happened the same night that the *MENE TEKEL* was written upon the wall.

Q. Was there not another kingdom of some importance at this time in Asia Minor ?

A. Yes ; *Cræsus*, king of *Lydia*, the richest prince of his time, reigned in the city of *Sardis*, the capital of his kingdom.

Q. Had he any persons of celebrity among the number of his courtiers ?

A. Not only *Æsop*, the Phrygian, author of the Fables, which have immortalized his name ; but all the principal men of Greece made their court to *Cræsus* on account of his riches and liberality.

Q. Did any Athenian of note visit his court ?

A. Yes ; *Solon*, the celebrated Legislator ; but he did not obtain the king's favor.

Q. How so ?

A. Because he despised his riches, and told him, that such was the uncertainty of all human enjoyments, that no one could be esteemed happy before his death.

Q. *Solon* then did not visit *Sardis* from any interested views ?

A. By no means ; he absented himself from *Athens*, because that city, to which he had given very wise and salutary laws, groaned under the oppression of *Pisistratus*, who had usurped a tyrannic authority.

Q. Did *Pisistratus* preserve his authority long ?

A. He reigned sixteen years, and left the crown to his sons, who had not, however, abilities to preserve it.



EIGHTH PERIOD.

FROM CYRUS, THE FIRST KING OF THE PERSIANS, TO THE BIRTH OF OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST.—560 YEARS.

Q. Who was *Cyrus* ?

A. The son of a Persian Lord, named *Cambyfes*, and of *Manaana*, the daughter of *Astyages*, the last king of the Medes.

Q. By what means did he transfer the sovereignty of the Medes to the Persians ?

A. He revolted from his grandfather *Astyages*, and vanquished him.

Q. What were his conquests ?

A. He first vanquished *Cresus*, king of Lydia, afterwards the Babylonians and Assyrians ; and by his victories founded the monarchy of the Persians, which was of very great extent.

Q. What religion did he profess ?

A. By the partiality he entertained for the Jews, and the testimony which God gives him in the Prophet Isaiah, it appears that he feared the God of Israel.

Q. In what did he show his partiality for the Jews ?

A. In permitting them to return to Jerusalem, under the conduct of *Zerubabel* and *Jeshua*, the son of *Josadak*, their High Priest.

Q. What was the consequence of this permission ?

A. Two years after their return, *Zerubabel* laid the foundation of the Temple, and erected an altar to God ; but the building of the Temple was impeded by the opposition and calumnies of the Samaritans.

Q. What testimony does God give Cyrus in the Prophet Isaiah ?

A. At the conclusion of the forty fourth, and at the beginning of the forty fifth chapter of that Prophet, God mentions him by name, two hundred and twenty years, before he was born ; and bestows on him the glorious titles of his Shepherd and his Anointed.

Q. What king reigned at Rome in the days of Cyrus ?

A. *Tarquin* the Proud, who obtained the crown by one crime, and lost it by another. The first was the murder of *Servius Tullius*, his father in law ; and the second, was, the injury done to *Lucretia*, a Roman Lady, by his son *Sextus Tarquinius*.

Q. What was the end of *Cyrus* ?

A. It is said, that having reigned thirty years, he imprudently made war on the Scythians, and was killed in an engagement with an army commanded by *Thomyris*, queen of the Massagetæ, a Scythian nation.

Q. Is it certain that *Cyrus* lost his life in this manner ?

A. No ; for some ancient authors, among whom is *Xenophon*, affirm that he died a natural death at an advanced age.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. His son, *Cambyfes*, a cruel and sanguinary prince, who reigned only seven years and five months.

Q. Where did he die ?

A. In Egypt, whither he had led an army against *Pfammenitas*, who had revolted from him.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. One of the magi, named *Smerdis*, who affirmed he was the brother of *Cambyfes*, and reigned seven months under that pretence.

Q. What gave rise to this deception ?

A. *Cambyfes* had a brother, whom, through jealousy, he had caused to be murdered. As his death had been kept secret, *Smerdis*, who in person resembled him, easily imposed upon the multitude.

Q. By whom was this fraud discovered ?

A. By seven Satraps or Persian Lords, who, being acquainted with the death of the young prince, conspired against the impostor and killed him in his palace.

Q. Who reigned after *Smerdis* ?

A. *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspes*, one of the seven confederate Lords; who is called also in scripture *Ahasuerus*.

Q. How came he to be preferred before the rest ?

A. Independent of the rights of birth, which were on his side, as he was of the royal family of Persia, he obtained the crown by virtue of an agreement that the Persian Lords entered into among themselves.

Q. What was that agreement ?

A. As the Persians at that time adored the Sun, the seven Satraps resolved, that he whose horse, when they were all assembled, should neigh first at the rising of the Sun, should be acknowledged king. The servant of *Darius* contrived, to set his master's horse to neighing, by which means he obtained the crown.

Q. Did *Darius* do any thing in favor of the Jews ?

A. Yes; he permitted them to build their Temple, which was finished in the eighth year of his reign.

Q. What was transacting in Greece during this time ?

A. The fourth year of the reign of *Cambyfes*, five hundred and twenty seven years before the Christian era,

Pisistratus, the tyrant of Athens, dying, *Hippias*, his eldest son, succeeded him, and reigned eighteen years, at the end of which he was driven from the throne by the people of Athens, who regained their liberty.

Q. Had Darius any war to sustain at the beginning of his reign?

A. The Babylonians revolted, but he subdued them by the assistance of his general *Zopyrus*, who contrived and executed an artful stratagem, which though applauded by the ancients, cannot be justified on the principles of equity.

Q. What was that stratagem?

A. He cut off his own nose and ears, and went over to the enemy; pretending that Darius had mutilated him; and by that means gained the confidence of the Babylonians, and betrayed them to his king.

Q. Let us now resume the history of Rome. What happened after Tarquin was driven from that city?

A. The Romans abolished the regal dignity, and instituted two annual consuls, the first of which were *Lucius Junius Brutus*, and *Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus*. It must, however, be observed, that the latter, a short time after, was obliged to renounce his office on account of his being of the family of the Tarquins; and that another consul, named *Paulus Valerius*, was substituted in his room.

Q. What became of Tarquin the Proud after he was driven from Rome?

A. He made several fruitless attempts to recover his former dignity. *Porfenna*, king of the Etrurians, not only assisted him with troops, but commanded them in person: all, however, was not able to surmount the firmness of the Romans, who valiantly sustained the war, and obliged Porfenna and Tarquin to retire.

Q. Did any person of note flourish in Greece at this time?

A. *Pythagoras*, a Grecian philosopher, born in the Isle of Samos, came into Italy and taught his philosophy at Crotona in the reign of Tarquin the Proud.

Q. What were the principles of his philosophy?

A. Among those which antiquity has preserved, some are truly absurd: for example, the metempsychosis, or

transmigration of souls, from which he drew the necessary inference, that we should abstain from all animal food.

Q. Was *Pythagoras* the only philosopher who lived in this period?

A. Two are mentioned, equally celebrated and singular : *Heraclitus* of Ephesus, and *Democritus* of Abdera.

Q. In what did their celebrity and singularity consist?

A. *Heraclitus* made every thing a subject for lamentation, and *Democritus* for mirth ; so that they might truly be called the weeping and laughing philosophers.

Q. Whence did this difference arise?

A. From the same cause : *Heraclitus* wept at the follies of mankind, and *Democritus* laughed at them.

Q. What were the wars of *Darius* after the conquest of Babylon?

A. He led an army against the Scythians, but the greater part of it was destroyed ; and undertook a war against the Greeks, in which he acquired still less glory.

Q. What were the motives that induced *Darius* to make war upon the Greeks?

A. *Hippias*, tyrant of Athens, had fled to his court, and importuned him incessantly to reestablish him on the throne. Independent of this, *Megabazes*, one of *Darius's* Satraps, making war upon the Greeks of Asia Minor, was frequently defeated by the Athenians, who assisted them. This insult, added to the entreaties of *Hippias*, determined *Darius* to send an army into Greece, which he did, commanded by *Datis*.

Q. Was the Persian army sufficiently powerful to undertake the conquest of Greece?

A. Yes ; if the troops that composed it had been as valiant as they were numerous ; but the Greeks exceeding them both in courage and conduct, the army of *Datis*, which was composed of, at least, a hundred thousand men, and some say three times that number, was defeated in the plains of Marathon, near Athens, by the Grecian army, which consisted of only ten thousand, commanded by *Miltiades*, the Athenian.

Q. How did *Darius* receive the news of this defeat?

A. His mortification was so severe, that it cost him

his life, while he was preparing to head a second expedition against the Greeks.

Q. In what state were the affairs of Greece during the reign of Darius ?

A. The Greeks were making a great progress in the fine arts, especially at Athens, where Tragedy was invented and carried to perfection by *Eschylus* and *Sophocles*.

Q. Are the productions of these poets still extant ?

A. Yes ; some of them : as also those of *Euripides*, who lived some years after *Sophocles*. These are the authors whom our great modern poets have chosen as models to fix the rules of the drama.

Q. Does the Roman history furnish us with any thing remarkable ?

A. After the expulsion of the kings, the republic, which was in its infancy, had but petty wars to sustain against its neighbours.

Q. What was the expedition of *Coriolanus* ?

A. *Caius Marcius Coriolanus*, having been unjustly banished by the Romans, his fellow citizens, was highly incensed, and withdrew into the country of the Volscii, the declared enemies of Rome. The command of the Volscian army being given him, he besieged Rome, and would have taken it had he not been moved by the entreaties of his mother and wife, who prevailed on him to raise the siege and retire.

Q. Who was the successor of *Darius*, the third king of Persia ?

A. *Xerxes*, his son, who reigned twenty years, and who, the fourth year of his reign, prosecuted against the Greeks the war his father had begun.

Q. Can you give me a detail of this war, and of the success which attended it ?

A. The army of *Xerxes* consisted of above eight hundred thousand men, independent of the troops that were on board more than one thousand and two hundred vessels, which he had at sea ; containing in all, as some say, more than three million fighting men. This immense army passed from Asia into Europe by a bridge of boats, which *Xerxes* caused to be formed over the Hellespont. To shorten the passage of his fleet, he cut through the

Isthmus that joins Mount Athos to the continent, and made a canal by which the vessels passed.

Q. Did Xerxes discover great pride at the head of this vast army?

A. Yes; he is said to have chastised the sea with a hundred stripes, for breaking down his bridge by its waves. He wept, however, in viewing his army from an eminence, to think they would all be dead in one hundred years.

Q. These great exploits were no doubt followed by some signal victories over the Greeks?

A. By no means; never was expedition more unfortunate. *Themistocles*, general of the Athenians, defeated the Persian fleet near Salamis; and the year following the land army, headed by *Mardonius*, who, at the battle of Marathon, was a commander for Darius, was entirely routed near the city of Platæ in Bœotia.

Q. Who gave this army the first check?

A. Leonidas, with three hundred Spartans withstood the whole army, at the straits of Thermopylæ, who fought till they were all slain but one man, whose own mother disowned him for turning his back upon the enemy.

Q. At what time did these great events happen?

A. In the year of the world, three thousand and five hundred, the two hundred and seventieth after the foundation of Rome, and four hundred and eighty four years before Christ.

Q. Were there any celebrated authors at this time?

A. Yes; *Herodotus* of Halicarnassus is particularly deserving of remembrance: he composed a Universal History, which was received with such applause, that the name of the *Nine Muses* was unanimously given to the nine books into which it is divided.

Q. Who succeeded Xerxes in the throne of Persia?

A. Artaxerxes Longimanus, his son, who reigned forty years.

Q. Did Xerxes die a natural death?

A. No; he was killed by Artabanus, an Hyrcanian, who, having afterwards wounded and attempted to kill Artaxerxes, received the punishment due to his crime.

Q. Recount any remarkable events that happened in the reign of *Artaxerxes*.

A. *Themistocles*, the Athenian general, being banished from his country by the envy of his fellow citizens, took refuge with this king, who, forgetting the enmity that had existed between his father and the Athenian, loaded him with riches and honors.

Q. How were the people of God situated at this time?

A. As all the Eastern nations obeyed the king of Persia, the Jews were comprised in that number. They enjoyed tranquillity during the reign of *Artaxerxes*, who permitted them to rebuild the walls of Jerufalem, notwithstanding the opposition of their enemies, the Samaritans, the Ammonites, and the Arabs.

Q. Did the Romans make any great figure in the world at this time?

A. No; their power was very limited, and their state continually disturbed by divisions between the nobles and the people.

Q. What do you mean by the nobles?

A. They consisted of the families of the patricians, who lived with such simplicity, that they themselves guided the plough, and cultivated their own lands.

Q. Who was taken from his plough and made dictator?

A. *Cincinnatus*, who defeated the enemies of his country, renounced all the honors bestowed upon him, and returned again to his farm in fourteen days from his appointment.

Q. By what laws were the Romans governed at this time?

A. Till the year of Rome three hundred, they had no other than those instituted by *Numa Pompilius* and their other kings; but at this time five commissioners were sent into Greece to bring from thence the laws of that country, and particularly those of *Solon*.

Q. What use did they make of these laws?

A. They selected from them such as appeared to be adapted to the constitution of the republic, and caused them to be engraved on twelve brazen tables: they were

then posted up in the most conspicuous part of the city, and the first day of every month were read before a general assembly of the people.

Q. Were not new magistrates appointed for the institution and preservation of these laws ?

A. Yes ; the office of consul was abolished, and all authority committed to magistrates, who were called decemviri.

Q. Did this magistracy continue long ?

A. Rather more than two years

Q. What was the cause of its short duration ?

A. The tyranny of the magistrates. One of them, *Appius Claudius*, becoming passionately in love with a young girl, named *Virginia*, seized her under the false pretence that she was his slave ; and her father, as the only means of preserving her honor and freedom, stabbed her with his own hand.

Q. What consequences followed this desperate action ?

A. The people took up arms, with *Virginius*, the father of *Virginia*, at their head, deposed the decemviri, and reestablished the consuls and tribunes of the people.

Q. What do you mean by tribunes ?

A. They were magistrates, which the people had elected as a check upon the too great authority of the nobles.

Q. Did peace reign among the Greeks at this time ?

A. No ; they were engaged in several wars against *Artaxerxes*, in which the advantage was on their side. They had also civil wars among themselves, the principal of which was that between the Athenians and the Lacedæmonians, who were never cordial friends, on account of the different form of their government.

Q. Were there any men of note at this time in Greece ?

A. Yes, many ; the principal were, *Pericles*, the Athenian general, and the philosopher *Socrates*, the greatest character Greece ever produced.

Q. In what did the merit of this philosopher principally consist ?

A. In recalling men from vain and frivolous pursuits to the knowledge of themselves, and to the study of virtue.

Q. Had he many disciples ?

A. He had a great number during his life, and still more after his death.

Q. Who were the most illustrious ?

A. Not to speak of *Alcibiades*, whose conduct did no honor to the doctrine of his master, among his auditors were *Xenophon*, and *Plato*, who have in writing transmitted to posterity the excellent instructions they received from him.

Q. What was the end of *Socrates* ?

A. He was condemned to death by his fellow citizens, at the instigation of two villains, who brought against him an accusation of introducing the worship of strange gods, and of corrupting the youth of the city by his doctrines. He died with the greatest composure of mind, giving out his salutary instructions, till his last breath.

Q. Did not the Athenians afterwards acknowledge their injustice towards him ?

A. They not only acknowledged it, but banished his accusers, and erected statues in honor of him.

Q. Did the Persian empire continue to flourish ?

A. Yes ; though it had lost much of its authority in Asia Minor by the victories obtained by the Greeks. These losses happened in the reign of *Ar. Xerxes Longimanus*, who, as before observed, reigned forty years.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Xerxes II.* who, after a reign of only two months, was succeeded by his brother *Sogdianus*, who reigned only seven. Neither of these princes effected any thing memorable.

Q. By whom were they succeeded ?

A. By *Darius Nothus*, who filled the throne nineteen years.

Q. Among the disciples of *Socrates*, you named *Alcibiades* ; give me an idea of his character.

A. He was a young Athenian, of noble birth and fine talents, but dissipated and intriguing : he sometimes bore arms in defence of his country, and sometimes a-

gainst it. Having purchased a beautiful dog, at an enormous price, he cut off his tail; for the sole purpose, as he said, of turning the discourse of people from himself to his dog. From his imprudent conduct, he at length came to an untimely end.

Q. Did not *Dionysius*, tyrant of Sicily, live at this time?

A. Yes; he was a valiant, but cruel prince, who made war on the Carthaginians, and obtained several victories over them.

Q. What was the principal exploit of *Dionysius*?

A. His victory over the Carthaginians, who, after several engagements in which they had been victorious, had rendered themselves masters of Sicily.

Q. Who succeeded *Darius Nothus*?

A. *Artaxerxes*, his son, the tenth king of the Persians. He reigned forty years, and was furnished with *Mnemon* on account of his excellent memory.

Q. Did the animosity between the Athenians and Lacedæmonians still subsist?

A. It was at this time at its highest pitch, and the Athenians were at length obliged to yield to the superior force of their enemy. *Lyfander*, the Lacedæmonian general, having taken the city of Athens, changed the government, and, depriving the people of all authority, put it into the hands of thirty of his own creatures, who, on account of the cruelty with which they exercised their power, were styled the *thirty tyrants*.

Q. Did they exercise their tyranny long?

A. During three years, at the end of which *Thrasylus*, an Athenian, at the head of a small party, drove out the *thirty tyrants*, and reestablished the democracy.

Q. What is the name given to the war between the Athenians and the Lacedæmonians, and how long did it continue?

A. It is called the Peloponnesian war, and continued twenty seven years. *Thucydides* has written the history of it. It was in the last year of this war that the city of Athens was taken by *Lyfander*.

Q. Did *Artaxerxes Mnemon* peaceably enjoy the empire left him by his father?

A. The beginning of his reign was disturbed by a war undertaken against him by the younger *Cyrus*, his brother, whom *Darius Nothus*, had, before his death, made satrap of Asia Minor.

Q. Recount some of the circumstances of this war.

A. *Cyrus* had in his army thirteen thousand Greek auxiliary troops, commanded by *Clearchus* the Lacedæmonian, and would infallibly have vanquished his brother, had not his temerity occasioned his destruction.

Q. How did this happen?

A. In the heat of the engagement between the two armies, the young prince imprudently rushed forward into the midst of his enemies, and was killed; when his army, till then victorious, having lost its chief, was thrown into disorder and routed.

Q. What became of the Greek auxiliaries?

A. The ten thousand that remained set themselves in a posture of defence, and resolved never to surrender to the Persians. *Clearchus*, having lost his life by the perfidy of Artaxerxes' general, *Xenophon*, the disciple of *Socrates*, took the command of the troops, and conducted them in safety through many barbarous nations, from the Euphrates to the Euxine sea, and from thence into Greece.

Q. Who has written the history of this expedition?

A. *Xenophon* himself, who was no less excellent as a historian, than great as a general.

Q. What other illustrious men flourished in Greece at this time?

A. One of the most celebrated was *Agésilas*, king of Lacedæmon, who possessed many virtues and great qualities. His life is written by *Xenophon*.

Q. In what state were the Romans at this time?

A. Great changes had taken place in their affairs. The Gauls, after having defeated the Roman army, took and pillaged the city of Rome. The capitol alone withstood their assaults, and *Camillus*, whom the Romans had before sent into exile, returning at the head of an army, drove them out of Rome.

Q. At what time did this important event happen?

A. Three hundred and sixty four years after the foun-

dition of Rome, and three hundred and ninety, before the birth of Christ.

Q. What remarkable occurrences took place in Greece at this time?

A. The Lacedæmonians, who had rendered themselves formidable to all Greece, were reduced to the last extremity, and wholly fallen from their ancient glory.

Q. What was the cause of their decline?

A. Their pride and arrogance, which rendered them odious to all Greece. *Epaminondas*, general of the Thebans, who had till now been oppressed by the Lacedæmonians, revolted, defeated them in several engagements, and thenceforth put it out of their power to oppress their neighbours.

Q. Who succeeded *Artaxerxes Mnemon*?

A. *Ochus*, the eleventh king of Persia, who reigned twenty six years. His government was by no means tranquil; several satraps revolted from him, and the Egyptians, who, from the time of *Cambyses*, had been subject to the Persians, elected a king of their own nation, though he retained the dignity but a very short time.

Q. Did the Grecian states enjoy tranquillity after the depression of the Lacedæmonians?

A. No; they brought on their ruin by their perpetual dissensions and intestine wars.

Q. Who took the advantage of these dissensions?

A. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, the father of *Alexander the Great*. This prince raised himself to a high pitch of power, for which he was even more indebted to his address than to his valour. His power became so formidable, that he in some measure gave law to all Greece.

Q. Which among the Grecian states made the strongest opposition to him?

A. The Athenians, who, animated by the orator *Demosthenes*, exerted their utmost efforts to check the growing power of the Macedonians. *Philip* used to say, that he feared the orations of *Demosthenes* more than all the Grecian fleets and armies.

Q. Did *Dionysius* the tyrant still reign in Syracuse?

A. No; his son, who bore the same name, had succeeded him, but lost the royal dignity after enjoying it

thirty eight years. *Dion*, a disciple and friend of *Plato*, the philosopher, gave liberty to Syracuse, and that part of Sicily that was dependant on it, three hundred and fifty seven years before Christ.

Q. Did *Dionysius* return any more to Syracuse?

A. He repossessed himself of it ten years after, but was again driven out by *Timocon*.

Q. What became of him afterwards?

A. He retired to Corinth, where he was reduced to the necessity of keeping a school for his livelihood.

Q. At what time was *Alexander the Great* born?

A. Three hundred and fifty five years before Christ, on the same night that the Temple of Diana at Ephesus was burned by *Erostratus*.

Q. Who was his mother?

A. *Olympias*, the daughter of Neoptolemus, king of Epirus.

Q. Who succeeded *Ochus*, king of Persia?

A. *Arses*, his son, who reigned only four years.

Q. Did this prince die a natural death?

A. No; one of his pages, named *Bagoas*, who had risen to great power in the Persian court, and who had killed *Ochus*, and raised his son *Arses* to the throne, poisoned *Arses* in his turn, and placed the crown on the head of *Darius Codomanus*, the thirteenth and last king of Persia.

Q. Did the perfidy of this wretch go unpunished?

A. No; he underwent the punishment due to his crimes; for attempting to poison *Darius* also, that prince, aware of his design, obliged him to drink the poison he had prepared for his master.

Q. How many years did *Philip*, king of Macedon, reign?

A. Twenty four; at the end of which he was stabbed by a man named *Pausanias*, as he was celebrating the nuptials of his daughter *Cleopatra* with *Alexander*, king of Epirus.

Q. What were the first exploits of *Alexander*, king of Macedon, the son and successor of *Philip*?

A. Having first got himself elected by the Greeks commander in chief of the army destined against the Persians, he marched against the Thebans, who had revolted

from him while he was on an expedition against the Thracians, took their city, and razed it to the very foundations, sparing only the houses of the poet *Pindar*, and the Theban general *Epaminondas*.

Q. At what time did he begin the war against Persia?

A. About four hundred and twenty two years after the foundation of Rome, and three hundred and thirty two before Christ.

Q. Give a sketch of the life and conquests of *Alexander the Great*.

A. He three times defeated the innumerable armies of *Darius*. First at the river Granicus, and then at Cilicia, after which he took and destroyed the city of Tyre. After taking Tyre, it is said, he determined to destroy Jerusalem; but was prevented by the high priest, who marched at the head of a procession, without the walls, to meet him, and that Alexander was so struck at the name of God on his mitre, that he desisted from his purpose. The last victory which he gained at Arbela was decisive. *Darius*, being totally defeated, fled, and was killed by *Bessus*, satrap of Bactria.

Q. Did *Alexander* make a generous use of his victory?

A. With respect to the person and family of *Darius*, he could not act more nobly: he not only revenged the death of that unfortunate prince, but treated his mother, wife, and daughters with the highest respect, preserving to them all the prerogatives of royalty.

Q. Did the wars of *Alexander* finish with the conquest of Persia?

A. No; he carried the war into India, where he defeated *Porus* in a pitched battle, after which he restored him his dominions, satisfied with the glory of the expedition; for which purpose alone he undertook it.

Q. What became of *Alexander* after his return from the Indies?

A. He fixed the seat of empire at Babylon, where he died, through hard drinking, in the twelfth year of his reign, and the thirty second of his age. Alexander well deserved the answer given him by the pirate, of whom he

demanded to know by what right he infested the seas ?
 "The same which you have to infest the whole world.
 I am called a robber, because I have but one small ship ;
 while you are called a conqueror, because you command
 great fleets and armies."

Q. Who was his successor ?

A. As he did not name one before his death, his generals divided into several factions, which having mutually destroyed each other, ended in two powerful kingdoms* ; that of Syria, founded by *Seleucus Nicator* ; and that of Egypt, the first king of which was *Ptolemy*, son of *Lagus*.

Q. What happened in Greece during this time ?

A. After the death of *Alexander*, the Greeks exerted their utmost efforts to regain their liberty ; but their mutual dissensions prevented their success. *Aristotle*, the celebrated philosopher and preceptor of *Alexander the Great*, died a short time after his pupil, at the age of sixty three.

Q. What other great men lived at this time ?

A. Alexander, king of Epirus, uncle by the mother's side to Alexander the Great. This prince, having led an army into Italy against the Romans, observed, that he fought with men, while his nephew was fighting with an army of women, alluding to the effeminacy of the Persians. Nor ought we to omit *Agathocles*, the son of a potter, of the city of *Rhegio* ; who, by his valour, made himself master of the city of Syracuse, and became king of all Sicily.

Q. How were the Jews governed ?

A. They lived peaceably under *Alexander the Great*, and *Seleucus*, king of Syria ; and were granted divers privileges by *Ptolemy*, king of Egypt. Their high priest was, at this time, the first magistrate.

* To these may be added two others, though of less extent and shorter duration, *Thrace* and *Macedon*. The first, which in the final division fell to the share of *Lysimachus*, comprehended the northern part of Asia Minor, and afterwards formed several distinct kingdoms ; each of which, either by conquest or bequest, fell under the power of the Romans. The last, which included all the Grecian provinces, was seized by *Cassander*, and maintained its independence till the time of *Perseus*, who was subdued by the Romans.

TRANSLATOR'S NOTE.

Q. What was the fate of Egypt after the death of *Alexander the Great*?

A. It has already been said, that *Ptolemy*, the son of *Lagus*, was its first king. All his successors bore the same name till *Cleopatra*, under whom Egypt became a province of the Roman empire.

Q. How many years did *Ptolemy*, the son of *Lagus*, reign, and who succeeded him?

A. He reigned twenty nine years, and was surnamed *Stoter*, that is to say, Saviour. His son, *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, succeeded him; and reigned thirty eight years.

Q. Was the reign of *Ptolemy Philadelphus* remarkable for any great event?

A. It was in the time of this prince, and, it is thought, by his orders, that the Old Testament was translated into Greek, in the city of Alexandria, which was then the capital of the empire.

Q. Is this translation still extant?

A. Yes; it is that called *Septuagint*, because translated by the labors of seventy different persons; and is frequently referred to by the sacred authors of the New Testament.

Q. Were the Romans at this time engaged in any war?

A. Yes; against *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus, one of the greatest generals of antiquity.

Q. What was the origin of this war?

A. The Romans having declared war against the inhabitants of Tarentum, from whom they had received some insults, the latter being defeated by the Romans, solicited the aid of *Pyrrhus*; who marched into Italy with a numerous army, in which was a considerable number of elephants.

Q. Did *Pyrrhus* gain any advantage over the Romans?

A. He defeated them in almost every engagement; but these victories cost him so many men, that finding his army much weakened, he thought it prudent to return by sea into his own country.

Q. Did he make any further attempts upon Italy?

A. He returned after an expedition into Sicily against

the Carthaginians; but had scarcely landed before he was defeated in an engagement with the Romans, who obliged him to retire.

Q. What became of him afterwards?

A. He engaged in many other wars. At length, having besieged the city of Argos, and entered it with his troops, as he was passing through a narrow street, a woman, from the top of a house, threw a tyle upon his head and killed him.

Q. In what other wars were the Romans engaged?

A. Their first war was the Carthaginian, otherwise the first *Punic* war. This also originated with the inhabitants of Tarentum, who solicited and received aid of the Carthaginians against the Romans.

Q. How long did this war continue?

A. Twenty four years: during which, the advantage was sometimes on one side, sometimes on the other.

Q. At what time did it begin?

A. Four hundred and ninety years after the building of Rome, and two hundred and sixty four before Christ.

Q. Did no remarkable event happen during this war?

A. None is more deserving of mention than the conduct of *Atilius Regulus*, general of the Roman army; who, having been taken in Africa by the Carthaginians, and sent to Rome to propose an accommodation and an exchange of prisoners, dissuaded the Senate from a compliance, which he thought injurious to his country, and returned to Carthage agreeably to his engagements, though he was sensible the Carthaginians would put him to a cruel death. Which immediately took place.

Q. How did the Romans proceed after the first Punic war?

A. Having made peace with the Carthaginians, they began to polish their manners by cultivating polite literature and the fine arts. Tragedy and comedy were introduced at Rome, in imitation of the Greeks, but in these early times exhibited much of ancient barbarity.

Q. Was the peace which the Romans made with the Carthaginians of long duration?

A. It lasted only twenty four years; and was suc-

ceeded by the second Punic war, which continued seventeen.

Q. What was its origin ?

A. The ambition of the Carthaginians, and in particular of *Hannibal*, the son of *Hamilcar* ; who, thirsting for fame, at a time of profound peace, besieged Saguntum, a city in alliance with the Romans. After this, penetrating into Italy, he gained great victories there over the Romans ; which, however, his imprudence in the end rendered of no advantage to his country.

Q. What was the conclusion of this war ?

A. *Scipio*, surnamed *Africanus*, led the Roman army into Africa, which obliged the Carthaginians to recall *Hannibal* with his troops. Afterwards, having defeated the Carthaginians, he obliged them to make a disgraceful peace, and to banish *Hannibal* from their country.

Q. Were the Jews in a state of tranquillity at this time ?

A. No ; the kings of Syria began to persecute them on account of their religion.

Q. Which were the most powerful and considerable monarchs ?

A. The kings of Egypt, those of Syria, and those of Macedonia. The empire of the *Parthians* was founded at this period by *Arfaces*, who threw off the yoke of the Syrians, and gave name to all his successors, who are after him called *Arfacide*.

Q. Did all these kings withstand the power of the Romans ?

A. No ; they were subdued one after another, the Parthians excepted, who were never conquered by the Romans.

Q. In what other wars were the Romans engaged ?

A. During the second Punic war they attacked Sicily where *Marcus Marcellus* took the city of Syracuse, after a siege of three years. The famous mathematician, *Archimedes*, was killed at the taking of this city, by a soldier, who stabbed him, at the very moment when he was exulting in his good fortune, at having solved an important problem.

Q. Did not the Macedonian war break out at this time?

A. Yes ; immediately after the second Punic war : it was occasioned by the imprudent conduct of *Philip*, king of Macedon, who, during that war, had formed a secret alliance with *Hannibal*, and had besides this given offence to the Romans on several occasions.

Q. What was the issue of it ?

A. *Philip* was several times defeated, and, at the end of five years, was obliged to accept a peace upon disgraceful terms, and to send his eldest son *Demetrius* as a hostage to Rome.

Q. What became of *Hannibal* during these transactions.

A. He had taken refuge with *Antiochus*, king of Syria ; who was at this time preparing to undertake a war against the Romans.

Q. Was this war really undertaken ?

A. Yes ; to the great detriment of *Antiochus*, who was entirely defeated by *Lucius Scipio*, on this account surnamed *Asiaticus*. *Antiochus*, reduced to the necessity of soliciting a peace, obtained it only by ceding the greater part of his dominions to the Romans.

Q. Did *Philip*, king of Macedon, preserve his dominions ?

A. Yes ; during his life ; and at his death transmitted the crown to his son *Perseus*.

Q. Why did not *Demetrius*, his eldest son, succeed him ?

A. *Perseus* had caused him to be assassinated during the life of his father, who was so affected, that he died soon after.

Q. What became of *Perseus* afterwards ?

A. He rashly commenced a war against the Romans, was vanquished, taken prisoner, and led in triumph through the streets of Rome, by *L. Emilius Paulus*, commonly called *Paulus Emilius*. Macedon from this time became a province of the Roman empire.

Q. What was the state of the Jews ?

A. It is to this period we must refer the troubles recorded in the books of Maccabees, and the persecution

of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, who attempted to abolish the Jewish religion ; an attempt which would have succeeded, had not *Judas Maccabeus*, the son of *Mattathias*. of the race of Aaron, valiantly repulsed the generals of Antiochus.

Q. Did any change take place in the form of their government ?

A. The high priests acquired greater authority, and in process of time even assumed the title of kings. The first who bore that name was *Aristobulus*, about three years before the birth of Christ.

Q. What title did these high priests bear ?

A. History styles them *Asmonians*, from *Asmonius*, the grandfather of *Mattathias*.

Q. Can you give an account of their succession ?

A. *Judas Maccabeus*, who was the first, was succeeded by his brother *Jonathan*, and afterwards by *Simon*, his brother also. *John Hyrcanus* succeeded his father *Simon* ; and *Aristobulus*, the son of *Hyrcanus*, was, as observed before, the first king. *Alexander Jannus*, his brother, was succeeded by his son *Hyrcanus*, who was dispossessed of his authority by his brother *Aristobulus*, and re-established by Pompey. It was under this *Hyrcanus*, that *Antipater*, the Idumean, the father of king Herod, settled at Jerusalem, and became powerful.

Q. Did the Romans enjoy peace after the conquests of Macedonia, Africa, and Asia ?

A. Their grandeur proved fatal to them. The Roman citizens suffered themselves to be corrupted by luxury ; and, losing thier native energy of character, sunk into a state of indolence and effeminacy, which rendered them an easy prey to the barbarians who overran their country.

Q. Did Carthage still exist ?

A. No ; in the third Punic war, six hundred and five years after the building of Rome, and one hundred and forty nine before Christ, it was utterly destroyed by *Scipio Emilianus*, the Roman general.

Q. Does not the Mithridatic war belong to this period ?

A. Yes ; *Mithridates*, king of Pontus, was one of the

most formidable enemies of the Romans. He carried on a war against them, in which he was sometimes victorious, and sometimes vanquished, during forty years; when, Pompey having at length entirely defeated him, he put a period to his own existence.

Q. In what other wars were the Romans engaged?

A. The most sanguinary were the civil wars between *Sylla*, *Marius*, and *Cinna*. *Sylla*, by his influence, got himself elected Dictator of the Roman republic, an office which conferred absolute authority. During the time he possessed it, he shed the blood of an infinite number of citizens, and committed unheard of cruelties.

Q. What great men lived at this time?

A. *Julius Caesar*, *Pompey*, and *Cicero*; who, during the dictatorship of *Sylla*, which lasted but three years, were very young.

Q. What was the character of these illustrious Romans?

A. *Caesar* and *Pompey* were distinguished by their valour, and *Cicero* by his wisdom and eloquence.

Q. Did *Cicero* render no memorable service to his country?

A. Yes; during his consulship, he saved the republic by discovering the conspiracy of *Catiline*, a Roman of noble descent, who, having dissipated his estate, and been refused the consulship, entered into a conspiracy, with several others, to murder the Senate, plunder the treasury, and set Rome on fire.

Q. How were *Caesar* and *Pompey* employed during this time?

A. *Pompey* was prosecuting the war against the pirates; and *Caesar* was suspected of being concerned in *Catiline's* conspiracy, though there were no positive proofs of his guilt.

Q. Were *Caesar* and *Pompey* friends?

A. They were so in appearance; and for their common interests formed a triumvirate, which ended in their own ruin, and that of the republic.

Q. What was this triumvirate?

A. It consisted in an alliance contracted between three of the most powerful citizens of Rome, *Caesar*, *Pom-*

Pompey, and *Licinius Crassus*. These three divided the empire between them. *Cæsar* had Gaul, in which he made war during ten years; *Pompey* had Spain; and *Crassus* possessed Syria, till he lost his life in an expedition against the Parthians.

Q. How did the alliance between *Cæsar* and *Pompey* end?

A. As their mutual greatness inspired mutual jealousy, their friendship had ever been merely external. *Cæsar* having demanded the consulship, and *Pompey*, who had a powerful party, having required that he should, on this account, disband his troops and come to Rome, an open rupture ensued, after which *Cæsar* entered Italy with his army, and made himself master of Rome.

Q. What became of *Pompey*?

A. He had left Italy and retired into Greece, where *Cæsar* pursuing him, defeated his army in the plains of Pharsalia in Thessaly.

Q. In what place did *Pompey* take refuge after his defeat?

A. He attempted to retire into Egypt, but was massacred by the order of young *Ptolemy*, brother to the celebrated Queen *Cleopatra*.

Q. What were the consequences of *Cæsar's* victories?

A. The total extinction of Roman liberty, and the establishment of the monarchy. *Cæsar* styled himself perpetual Dictator, and meditated assuming the imperial dignity, when, the fourth year of his dictatorship, several conspirators, the chief of whom were *Bрутus* and *Кассиус*, murdered him in the senate house.

Q. Did the Roman republic recover its liberty after the death of *Cæsar*?

A. No; *Mark Antony*, a factious, dissolute character, enflamed the minds of the people against the murderers of *Cæsar*, and took up arms against his country.

Q. How did he support his cause?

A. By forming a union with *Octavius*, grandson of a sister of *Julius Cæsar*, who, by his will, had adopted him. This young man assumed the title of *Cæsar*; and, though only nineteen years of age, raised troops to oppose *Antony*.

over whom he at first gained some advantages. They at length, however, came to an accommodation, and united in turning their arms against the republic.

Q. How was this brought about ?

A. *Antony*, having joined *Lepidus*, who commanded an army in Gaul, came to a parley with *Octavius*, who was from that time stiled, the *Emperor Augustus*; and, after having proposed to him to revenge the death of *Caesar*, prevailed on him to consent to a triumvirate for the pretended reestablishment of the republic.

Q. What was the result of this triumvirate ?

A. Not only the total annihilation of liberty, but a cruel proscription of the richest and most worthy citizens, on whose heads a price was set to enrich their persecutors by the confiscation of their estates. Among these perished Cicero, whose head was struck off, in the sixty third year of his age, forty years before Christ, and in the seven hundred and thirteenth year of Rome.

Q. Did the friendship of Antony and Augustus continue ?

A. No; *Antony* having divorced *Octavia*, the sister of *Augustus*, attached himself to *Cleopatra*, queen of Egypt and drew upon himself a war, in which he, as well as that queen, perished. From this time Egypt became a province of the Roman Empire.

Q. In what state were the affairs of the Jews ?

A. *Antipater*, the father of *Herod*, left his son possessed of great power: this, during the wars of the Romans, he increased, by alternately favouring each side. He acted with such address, that he obtained from the Senate the title of King of Judea, of which the Asmonians entirely lost the possession. It was in his reign that our blessed Lord Jesus Christ was born, seven hundred and fifty three years after the building of Rome, and in the three thousand nine hundred and eighty third* year of the world.

Q. Were the Batavians known before Christ ?

* According to Archbishop Usher, our Lord was born in the year of the world four thousand and four.

† A people who inhabited the country now called Holland.

A. Yes; they inhabited the country of Hesse: about a century before this æra, they left it to settle in the Netherlands.

Q. When did they fall under the power of the Romans?

A. In the time of Julius Cæsar.

P A R T II.

Q. **H**OW is this second part of universal history divided?

A. First by epochas and periods; and secondly by the eighteen centuries which have just elapsed since the birth of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Q. What are the epochas and periods?

A. Seven epochas and six periods are in all reckoned to the present time

Q. What are the epochas?

A. I. The birth of Jesus Christ.

II. The conversion of the Emperor Constantine.

III. The coronation of Charlemagne.

IV. The beginning of the reign of Henry the Fowler.

V. The coronation of Rodolphus, Count of Hapsburg.

VI. Frederick I. Elector of Brandenburg.

VII. The birth of Frederick II. King of Prussia.

Q. How are the periods arranged?

A. The first, from the birth of Christ to the conversion of the Emperor Constantine, includes three hundred and twelve years,

The second, from the conversion of Constantine to the coronation of Charlemagne, four hundred and eighty eight years.

The third, from the coronation of Charlemagne to the death of Henry the Fowler, one hundred and twenty years.

The fourth, from the death of Henry the Fowler to

the election of Rodolphus, Count of Hapsburg, the first emperor of the House of Austria, three hundred and sixty three years.

The fifth, from the Emperor Rodolphus to Frederick I. Elector of Brandenburg, one hundred and forty four years.

The sixth, from Frederick I. Elector of Brandenburg, to the peace of Teschen, concluded May the 13th, 1779, three hundred and sixty two years:

Q What is the use of these epochas and periods ?

A. They enable us to fix the order of the events, and to mark them according to their proper dates ; though the computation by centuries is a method more generally in use, as being shorter and more easily committed to memory.

FIRST PERIOD.

FROM THE BIRTH OF JESUS CHRIST TO THE CONVERSION OF CONSTANTINE—312 YEARS.

FIRST CENTURY.

Q. What emperor reigned at Rome when Christ was born ?

A The Emperor *Augustus*, who, after the defeat of Antony, changed the Roman republic into a monarchy. He died Anno Domini, fourteen, aged seventy six : forty three years after the death of *Mark Antony*, his competitor.

Q. Who was his successor in the empire ?

A. *Tiberius*, the son of the Empress *Livia* and of *Domitius Nero*, her first husband. *Augustus* nominated him his successor.

Q. What was the character of *Tiberius* ?

A. He was a wise and politic prince ; but cruel, suspicious, and voluptuous. He ascended the throne at the age of fifty five, and died at the age seventy eight, after a reign of twenty three years, Anno Domini, thirty seven.

Q. How many years did our Lord pass upon earth ?

A. Thirty three, or at the most thirty four. He was born in the twenty ninth year of the reign of the *Emperor Augustus*, computing from the battle of *Actium*, in which *Antony* was vanquished, and he died towards the end of the reign of *Tiberius*, in the year of Rome seven hundred and eighty five, or six.

Q. Whence do we derive a knowledge of his life and actions?

A. All the authentic information we possess on this subject is comprehended in the books of the New Testament. The four Evangelists give us a narrative of his life and actions, and the Acts of the Apostles, written by St. Luke, preserve to us an account of the first establishment of the Christian Church.

Q. Are there no other cotemporary historians who have treated on what passed during the three first ages of the church?

A. No; few records of these early times remain. All the certain information we have, is, that the church of God, in less than two hundred years, spread throughout all the countries of the known world.

Q. Who was the successor of the Emperor *Tiberius*?

A. *Caius Caligula*, the son of *Germanicus*, and grandson of *Drusus*, the son of *Livia*, and younger brother of *Tiberius*.

Q. What was the character of this prince?

A. He was a monster of cruelty and impiety. Such was his impatience to reign, that it is said he strangled the Emperor *Tiberius* with his own hands, in the island of Cyprus, while that prince was in his last agonies.

Q. What enormities does history particularly record of Caligula?

A. He used to say, that he wished the Roman people had but one head, that he might have the pleasure of striking it off at a stroke. Strike, said he, on a certain occasion, in such a manner that he may feel himself die. Having burst out into a fit of laughter before the consuls; I was thinking, said he, that with a wink of my eye, I could cause you both to be murdered. With all these vices he had the ambition of being treated as a God, and actually being worshipped as such.

Q. Did these absurd vices proceed from an erroneous education, or were they the natural result of a corrupt disposition?

A. It is thought that a *philtre*, given him by his mistress *Casonia*, of whom he was passionately fond, had deranged his understanding.

Q. Did he reign long?

A. Something more than four years. A number of conspirators, of whom *Chærias*, one of his principal officers, was the chief, killed him in his palace. *Casonia*, and a daughter she had by *Caligula*, were also murdered by the same conspirators.

Q. Of what age was *Caligula* when he died?

A. He was twenty nine, and began his reign at the age of twenty five.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His uncle *Claudius*, the son of *Drusus*, who began to reign, Anno Domini, forty one.

Q. Before you proceed any further, give me a complete genealogy of the house of the Emperor *Augustus*.

A. *Octavius*, surnamed *Augustus*, and who also took the name of *Cæsar* from his great uncle *Julius Cæsar*, who had by his will adopted him, had two wives. By the first, named *Scribonia*, he had one daughter; by *Livia*, the second, he had no children.

Q. What was the name of the daughter of *Augustus* by *Scribonia*?

A. *Julia*. This princess had three husbands. *M. Marcellus*, the son of *Octavia*, sister of *Augustus*; *Agrippa*; and *Tiberius*, who was afterwards emperor.

Q. Had she any children?

A. Only by *Agrippa*. Three sons and two daughters. The sons were *Caius*, and *Lucius Cæsares*, and *Agrippa*, surnamed *Posthumus*, from being born after the death of his father.

Q. What were the names of the daughters?

A. *Julia*, surnamed the Younger, and *Agrippina*, the wife of *Germanicus*.

Q. What was the fate of these three princes, the sons of *Julia* and *Agrippa*?

A. *Caius*, and *Lucius Cæsares*, whom the Emperor *Augustus* had adopted, perished at an early age by the intrigues of the Empress *Livia*, and of her son *Tiberius*; and *Agrippa*, whom *Augustus* had exiled into *Campania*, was killed there immediately after the death of *Augustus*, by the order of *Tiberius*.

Q. What was the character of *Julia*, the daughter of *Augustus*?

A. She was a princess of such depraved manners, that the emperor, her father, was obliged to banish her into the Isle of *St. Mary*, off the coast of the kingdom of *Naples*, at the top of the Gulf of *Gaëte*. In this melancholy exile she ended her days.

Q. Is this all the genealogy of the Emperor *Augustus*?

A. No; he adopted the two sons of the Empress *Livia*, by her first husband *Domitius Nero*. These were, the Emperor *Tiberius*, and *Drusus Nero*.

Q. Had the Emperor *Tiberius* any children?

A. He had children, but they all died before him.

Q. What became of *Drusus*, his brother?

A. He died by a fall from his horse in *Germany*, where he was prosecuting the war.

Q. Did he leave any posterity?

A. He left a son, and two daughters. The eldest of his sons was *Germanicus*, the husband of *Agrippina*. This prince, by the intrigues of *Tiberius* and *Livia*, was poisoned in *Asia*. The younger son of *Drusus* was the Emperor *Claudius*, who succeeded *Caligula*, the son of *Germanicus* and *Agrippina*.

Q. Had *Claudius* any children?

A. He had by *Mæsalina*, his third wife, *Octavia*, the wife of the Emperor *Nero*, and *Claudius Britannicus*, whom *Nero* put to death in the first year of his reign.

Q. What was the character of *Claudius*?

A. He was not remarkable for his vices, or his virtues. Though he was not destitute of understanding, he suffered himself to be governed by his women and his freedmen, at whose instigation he committed many bad actions.

Q. How many years did he reign?

A. Thirteen; and died at the age of sixty four, Anno Domini, fifty four. Agrippina, his fourth wife, poisoned him in a dish of mushrooms.

Q. What was her motive?

A. The desire of seeing her son *Nero* emperor.

Q. Of what family was Agrippina?

A. She was *Claudius'* niece, the daughter of his brother Germanicus, and of the elder Agrippina, of whom mention has before been made.

Q. What reason had she for wishing her son to reign?

A. Merely ambition. It is said, that a soothsayer having predicted that her son would put her to death, if he attained the throne, she exclaimed, "No matter, so he be but emperor."

Q. Who was the father of *Nero*?

A. *Cneius Domitius Nero*, whose morals were equally depraved as those of his wife. Of this he appears to have been himself sensible; for being one day congratulated on the birth of his son *Nero*, he replied, "Nothing good can proceed from my wife and me."

Q. And did *Nero* really prove a bad character?

A. He was one of the most detestable monsters that ever governed the empire of Rome. Notwithstanding, when he began his reign, he appeared so compassionate, that before signing a death warrant, he said he wished he had never learned to write.

Q. What were his principal crimes?

A. He poisoned his brother *Britannicus*, and cruelly put to death his wife *Octavia*, a very virtuous princess, only twenty years of age. He caused his mother, *Agrippina*, to be assassinated; and obliged *Seneca*, his preceptor, to make choice of his own death. To complete all his crimes, he was the first emperor who persecuted the church of Christ.

Q. Under what pretence did he persecute the Christians?

A. He had set the city of Rome on fire, and the conflagration having done great damage, to avert the suspicion from himself, he accused the Christians, and suborned false witnesses to support the charge. Thought

their innocence was generally known to the people, it did not prevent Nero inflicting on them the most cruel punishments.

Q. Did he not also put to death the apostles *Paul* and *Peter*?

A. It is the common opinion; but it is certain that they did not suffer on account of the conflagration of Rome; and some learned men are of opinion, that St. *Peter* never went into Italy.

Q. Who reigned at this time in Jerusalem?

A. Jerusalem was subject to the Romans, who sent governors thither. The posterity of *Herod*, however, reigned in Judea till the destruction of that city, Anno Domini, seventy.

Q. Give me an idea of their succession?

A. *Herod the Great*, under whom our Lord Jesus Christ was born, had several sons; among others *Archelaus*, and *Herod*, surnamed the Tetrarch. Another of his sons, named *Archibulus*, was the father of King *Agrippa*, who is mentioned in the Acts of the Apostles; and this *Agrippa* had a son of the same name, who survived the taking of Jerusalem by *Titus*.

Q. What illustrious men lived in this century, from the reign of *Augustus* to that of *Nero*?

A. *Titus Livy*, author of the Roman history. The poets *Virgil*, *Ovid*, and *Horace*, under *Augustus*. Under *Tiberius*, *Valerius Maximus*, and *Valleius Paternulus*. And under *Nero*, the philosopher *Seneca*, his preceptor, and the poet *Lucan*.

Q. How many years did *Nero* reign?

A. He reigned thirteen years and nine months, and died at the age of thirty one, Anno Domini, sixty nine.

Q. What was his end?

A. His crimes having rendered him the execration of the human kind, the whole empire rose against him, and even his own guards forsook him. Understanding, at a country house in which he had concealed himself, that the Senate had condemned him to an ignominious death, he put a period to his own existence.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, who reigned only seven

months, and was killed by the faction of *Otho*. This prince reigned only three months, and put a period to his life, after giving battle to the troops of *Vitellius*, who possessed the empire eight months; at the end of which he was massacred by the soldiers of *Vespasian*, who disputed the empire with him.

Q. Where was *Vespasian* at this time?

A. In the province of Syria, of which *Nero* had made him governor. He was prosecuting a successful war there against the Jews, who had revolted from the Romans; but learning that his party were victorious, he left the conduct of the war against the Jews to his son *Titus*, and repaired to Rome, having first visited Egypt, where he made a short stay.

Q. Was *Vespasian* of noble birth?

A. No; but he was a man of great merit and personal valour. The family of the *Cæsars* ended in *Nero*; but the succeeding emperors assumed the name of *Cæsar*, because the Romans had been so long accustomed to it. This name, therefore, though at first merely that of a particular family, at length became a title of dignity.

Q. Had *Vespasian* any children?

A. He had two sons, who in turn succeeded him, *Titus* and *Domitian*.

Q. How long did *Vespasian* reign?

A. Ten years and six months.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His eldest son *Titus*, who had, in the beginning of his reign, taken and destroyed the city of Jerusalem.

Q. Did *Titus* reign long?

A. He reigned only three years; and died much regretted by all the nations who were under the dominion of the Romans.

Q. He was then a virtuous prince?

A. His conduct was so exemplary, that he was called "The delight of mankind." It is recorded of this prince, that one day recollecting he had not bestowed a favor on any one, he observed with an air of vexation to his attendant, "My friends, I have lost a day!"

Q. To whom did he leave the empire?

A. To his brother *Domitian*, who was, in every respect, unlike himself.

Q. What was the character of *Domitian*?

A. He was a very wicked prince, a second *Nero*, whom he resembled not only in his disposition, but in his countenance. He was called *Nero* the Bald, from the want of hair on the fore part of his head.

Q. Can you relate any particulars concerning the conduct of *Domitian*?

A. On groundless suspicions and reports, which he gave himself no trouble to investigate, he cruelly put to death a great number of Roman citizens; and banished from Rome, on pain of death, all professors of philosophy. His device, like that of *Nero*, was, "They are welcome to hate me, if they do but fear me."

Q. He doubtless took measures to enforce his authority?

A. He exercised it with so much senseless pride, that he issued all edicts in these terms, "Our Lord and our God *Domitian* commands such or such things."

Q. A tyrant like this could not fail of persecuting the Christians?

A. He would have done it effectually, and took measures accordingly; but this, which was called the second persecution, was of short duration, *Domitian* dying a short time after it was begun.

Q. Did any characters of note suffer in this persecution?

A. *Domitian* put to death his cousin *Flavius Clement*, and *Flavia Domitilla*, his wife, for their profession of Christianity. He also exiled *St. John the Evangelist* to the Isle of Patmos, where God revealed to him those divine visions, which he has recorded in the book of Revelation.

Q. How long did the reign of *Domitian* continue?

A. Fourteen years; at the end of which he was killed by a faction, headed by the captain of his guards, *Anno Domini*, ninety six.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Cocceius Nerva*, who annulled all the ordinances and laws established by *Domitian*. At this time *St. John*

the Evangelist left the Island of Patmos, and returned to Ephesus, the usual place of his abode.

Q. What was the character of *Nerva*?

A. He was a very virtuous prince; but, on account of his advanced age, and the mildness of his disposition, was deficient in that vigour necessary for the government of the empire.

Q. What benefit did the Romans derive from him?

A. By adopting the Emperor *Trajan*, he procured for them one of the best princes that ever reigned.

Q. How long did *Nerva* reign?

A. A year and some months; at the end of which *Trajan* took his place, Anno Domini, ninety eight.

Q. Do the historians of this age mention the *Frisi*?

A. They were not known to the Romans till they were vanquished, and rendered tributary by *Drusus*.

Q. Did they bear the Roman yoke patiently?

A. No; they revolted, made divers reprisals, and fully employed the generals *Ap. onius*, *Corbulo*, and *Avitus*.

Q. What was the conduct of the *Batavi* at this time?

A. They at first assisted the Romans against the *Frisi*, but revolted, Anno Domini, sixty nine. *Claudius Civilis Cerialis*, sent by *V. spasian* against the *Batavi*, forced them to lay down their arms, but on condition of being acknowledged, as formerly, allies of the Romans, and of paying no tribute.

SECOND CENTURY.

Q. Did the Emperor *Trajan* really deserve the encomiums historians unanimously bestow on him?

A. His merit has never been disputed, and has been confirmed by the testimony of all ages, though a particular detail of his actions has not been transmitted to us, the greater part of the historians of his time being lost.

Q. Did he signalize himself in war?

A. Yes; he united several barbarous nations to the

* A people who inhabited the neighbourhood of the Rhine, now the Frisians of Friesland.

empire ; among others the Dacii, whom he entirely subdued, having reduced their king, *Decebalus*, to such despair, that he put an end to his own existence. The Dacii inhabited that part of Europe which is now called Transylvania.

Q. Does any monument of this expedition remain ?

A. There is a beautiful column still to be seen at Rome, called Trajan's Pillar ; within is a flight of winding stairs to ascend to the top, and the outside is ornamented with beautiful sculpture in bas relief, representing the two expeditions of *Trajan* against the Dacians.

Q. Did not *Trajan* undertake other expeditions ?

A. He made war upon the Armenians, the Samatans, and the Parthians, over whom he was constantly victorious.

Q. How were the Jews governed at this time ?

A. After the taking of Jerusalem they were entirely subjected to the Romans. Those dispersed in Egypt and Cyrenica revolted, but were entirely defeated, and a great number massacred. Since the death of our Lord Jesus Christ, they have remained a wandering people, scattered throughout all nations.

Q. Was the virtues of *Trajan* without blemish ?

A. He can only be reproached with persecuting the Christians, on whom he had been persuaded to look with a suspicious eye ; but this persecution was of short duration, for *Pliny* the younger, who was then consul of Bithynia, where a great number of Christians resided, having written to the Emperor a very elegant letter, in which he bears witness to the innocence of the first Christians' lives, *Trajan* stopped the proceedings against them. *Pliny's* letter is still extant.

Q. Was *St. John the Evangelist* still alive ?

A. No ; he died in the beginning of the second century, at above ninety years of age.

Q. What great men lived at the time of *Trajan* ?

A. *Plutarch*, the celebrated Greek philosopher ; *Cornelius Tacitus*, who wrote the history of Rome ; *Suetonius*, from whom we have the history of the twelve first Emperors ; and *Pliny* the younger, who has left us his letters and panegyric of *Trajan*.

Q. How many years did this Emperor reign ?

A. Nineteen : he died, Anno Domini, one hundred and seventeen.

Q. Of what nation was he ?

A. He was a Spaniard.

Q. Who was his successor ?

A. *Adrian* ; in Latin *Ælius Hadrianus*.

Q. What was the character of this prince ?

A. Neither much good nor much evil can be said of him. He possessed understanding and erudition, but wished alone to excel in all things, and hated his competitors even to cruelty. He wrote against a celebrated philosopher, named *Favonius*, who, instead of answering him, observed, "*There is danger in writing against one who has the power of proscribing.*"

Q. Relate some of *Adrian's* actions.

A. When his favorite, a handsome young man, named *Antinous*, was drowned in the Nile, he caused him to be ranked among the Gods, and erected temples to him, insomuch that this ridiculous divinity was worshipped throughout the whole Roman empire till the destruction of paganism.

Q. Did *Adrian* build no cities or other monuments to perpetuate his name ?

A. He built a sumptuous edifice at Rome, formerly called *Adrian's chapel*, and now the church of St. Angelo ; besides which he attempted to reestablish Jerusalem, and built a city on its ruins, which he called *Ælia*.

Q. How did the Jews conduct themselves on this occasion ?

A. Incensed at the privileges granted the pagan worshippers in their new city, they revolted, and were not subdued till the end of the sanguinary war, in which a great number of them perished.

Q. Who was the author and chief of this revolt ?

A. A Jew, who called himself *Barcocheba*, or the Son of the Star. This impostor asserted that he was the Messiah of the Jews, and the Star predicted by the prophet *Balaam*. The Jews flocked to him in crowds, verifying the prediction of our Lord Jesus Christ. "I am come in my father's name, and ye receive me not ; if another shall come in his own name, him ye will receive."

Q. What became of this deceiver ?

A. He perished miserably in the war, leaving behind him a name universally detested among the Jews, who now called him *Barabba*, or the *Son of Falschood*.

Q. How long did *Adrian* reign ?

A. Twenty years and eleven months. He died, Anno Domini, one hundred and thirty eight, aged sixty two years and six months.

Q. To whom did he leave the empire ?

A. To *Antoninus*, surnamed *Pious*, who reigned till the beginning of the year one hundred and sixty one, and who governed with equal wisdom and goodness.

Q. Was this Emperor related to *Adrian* ?

A. No ; *Adrian* adopted him on account of his virtues.

Q. Did any great events happen during the reign of *Antoninus* ?

A. As the greater part of the historians of the second century are lost, very little can be said on this subject. Christianity continued to spread in the surrounding countries, notwithstanding persecutions were very frequent throughout the whole Roman empire.

Q. Had no Christian taken up his pen in defence of Christianity ?

A. Yes ; several : among others *Justin Martyr*, the philosopher, wrote two elegant Apologies for the Christian Religion, to which he was converted. This holy man, whose works are still extant, was at last burnt alive at Rome for the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Q. Did paganism produce any other great men ?

A. *Galen*, a celebrated philosopher and great physician, flourished at this time ; as also *Arrian*, another philosopher, to whom we are indebted for some very fine compositions ; and, among others, for the life of *Alexander the Great*, written in a masterly style.

Q. Who succeeded the Emperor *Antoninus* ?

A. He had chosen two successors, who reigned jointly after his death, *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*, surnamed the philosopher, and *Lucius Elius Verus*, who was his colleague in the empire. This was the first instance of two Emperors reigning at the same time.

Q. What were the characters of these two princes ?

A. *Elivs Verus* was fond of ease, and voluptuous ; by nature averse to cruelty and injustice : he reigned little more than eight years, at the end of which he died of an apoplexy, leaving the empire to *Marcus Aurelius*, who was infinitely his superior in virtue and knowledge, though during their joint reign perfect concord had subsisted between them.

Q. Have you any thing further to observe respecting *Marcus Aurelius* ?

A. He possessed many virtues and great qualities ; his life was one continued series of good actions ; and historians unanimously agree, that, whether he is considered an Emperor, or as a private man, he is one of the greatest characters that ever appeared in the world.

Q. Under so good a prince the Christian religion could certainly be in no danger of persecution ?

A. The Christians nevertheless ceased not to suffer ; the laws of the empire were by no means favorable to them, and the Emperor himself professing philosophy, was prejudiced against them, as appears from what he has written in his Book of Reflections, where he accuses the Christians of infatuation and obstinacy.

Q. He persecuted the Christians then ?

A. This is not said, though it is certain that in his time there were martyrs. A learned Christian, named *Athenagoras*, addressed to him a masterly Apology for the Christian religion ; and it is presumed that his remonstrances had the desired effect, and convinced the Emperor of the innocence of the unjustly persecuted Christians.

Q. Did *Marcus Aurelius* sustain any wars during his reign ?

A. Yes ; several : one against the Parthians, whom he defeated, having been himself first vanquished ; another against *Avidius Cassius*, a celebrated Roman general, who revolted from him and took the title of Emperor ; a third and last in Germany, where he died, after a reign of nineteen years.

Q. At what age did he die ?

A. At fifty eight : he attained the empire in the year

one hundred and sixty one, and died in the month of April, Anno Domini, one hundred and eighty.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. The Emperor *Commodus* (*L. Aurelius Commodus*) a prince wholly given up to wickedness, and totally unworthy his father. After so many virtuous Emperors, this monster revived the memory and conduct of the *Neros* and *Domitians*.

Q. Whence did these evil propensities arise?

A. Partly from the indulgence of those to whom the Emperor had confided the care of his education, and partly to the Empress *Fausina*, a princess of whom history does not speak in very advantageous terms.

Q. How many years did *Commodus* reign?

A. About twelve. After having cruelly put to death several senators, and a number of innocent persons, *Marcia*, his concubine, assisted by his two chamberlains, named *Latus* and *Elebus*, strangled him.

Q. What reasons led her to engage in this desperate attempt?

A. *Commodus* had written upon his tablets the names of those persons whom he designed to put to death the next day: the tablets happened to fall into the hands of *Marcia*, who seeing her own name in the list, took this method of preserving her life.

Q. Into whose hands did the empire fall after the death of *Commodus*?

A. *Latus* and *Elebus* chose for Emperor an old noble, named *Pertinax*, who accepted the empire much against his own inclinations.

Q. Did he reign long?

A. Little more than three months. The soldiers of the Pretorian Legion, who were the guard of the Emperor, disgusted with the austerity of his manners, cruelly massacred him, to the great regret of the Senate, and of the whole city of Rome.

Q. What was the consequence of this atrocious action?

A. The rebels having cut off all access to the gates of Rome, put up the empire to sale, and at last, for a sum of money, bestowed it on an old senator, named *Did-*

ius Julianus, a man of corrupt morals, who, at the end of two months, was killed by the same soldiers by whom he had been elected.

Q. On what account did they murder him?

A. Because he was unable to furnish them with the large sums of money he had promised them, when they sold him the imperial dignity.

Q. What was the consequence of all these troubles?

A. A celebrated general, named *L. Septimius Severus*, who commanded the Roman army in Panponia, now Hungary, got himself elected Emperor by his troops; while *Clodius Albinus*, another general, did the same in Britain; and another, called *Pescennius Niger*, in Syria. *Severus* prevailed over his competitors, and, after several engagements, became master of the Roman empire.

Q. Was he a good prince?

A. The Roman senate expressed their opinion in these words: "This prince should never have been born, or should never have died."

Q. What was the meaning of this expression?

A. The cruelty of *Severus* rendered him odious, especially at the beginning of his reign; but his love of justice became so advantageous to the public, that he died universally regretted.

THIRD CENTURY.

Q. In what state was Christianity during the reign of *Severus*?

A. This Emperor prohibited all his subjects, under pain of death, from embracing the Christian religion.

Q. What was the result of this prohibition?

A. Several Christians suffered for their faith under the reign of *Severus*, among whom was *Leonidas*, father of the celebrated *Origen*.

Q. Was Christianity still professed amidst these persecutions?

A. Yes; it even increased throughout all the provinces of the empire. Many learned pagans embraced it; among others *Tertullian*, who, besides several works

tain, named *Martial*, to stab him, which he took the first favourable opportunity of doing, when the emperor was separated from his troops.

Q. Who reigned after him?

A. *Macrinus*, who had caused him to be assassinated. He made his son, *Diadumenus*, partner in the empire; but at the end of a twelvemonth, both were massacred by the soldiers, Anno Domini, two hundred and nineteen.

Q. What was the cause of this assassination?

A. The voluptuous and effeminate life of *Macrinus*, who, at the age of fifty four, abandoned himself to all kinds of debauchery: add to this the affection which the soldiers entertained for the memory of *Caracalla*, who, pursuing the dying injunctions of his father, had always made it his chief object to conciliate the favour of the soldiers.

Q. Who succeeded *Macrinus*?

A. A young man, called *Avitus*, better known by the name of *Antoninus Heliogabalus*.

Q. By what means did he attain the empire?

A. By the intrigues of his grandmother, *Mesa*. *Julia*, the wife of *Severus*, and mother of *Caracalla*, had a sister, named *Mesa*, who, as well as herself, was originally of the city of *Emesa* in Syria. *Mesa* had spent several years at Rome, during the reigns of *Severus* and *Caracalla*, and had two daughters, one named *Semis*, and the other *Mamma*. *Avitus* was the son of *Semis*, and, according to the testimony of his mother and of his grandfather, his father was the Emperor *Caracalla*.

Q. Continue the recital

A. *Avitus* was priest of a pretended divinity, who was worshipped at *Emesa* under the name of *Heliogabalus*, and under the form of a stone, which was said to have descended from heaven. The soldiers of *Macrinus*, who were in the neighbourhood, having seen *Avitus*, as he officiated in the temple, charmed with the beauty of his person, revolted in his favour, and proclaimed him Emperor, after having murdered *Macrinus* and his son.

Q. *Mesa* was doubtless concerned in this intrigue?

A. Yes; as she possessed great riches, she bribed the principal officers of the army by magnificent presents.

Q. How did the new Emperor govern ?

A. His conduct was so infamous, that all historians speak of it with horror. He took the name of *Anoninus Heliogabalus*, on account of his pretended father, and of the idol of which he was priest before he was made Emperor.

Q. You have spoken of *Mamea*, aunt to *Heliogabalus*, what became of her ?

A. She went to Rome with a son she had, named *Alexianus*, who, having been adopted by the Emperor, took the name of *Alexander Severus*.

Q. Did *Heliogabalus* reign long ?

A. About three years ; from, Anno Domini, two hundred and nineteen to two hundred and twenty two.

Q. How did he die ?

A. After committing the most horrid crimes and shameful excesses, he attempted to take away the life of his cousin, *Alexander Severus*, being enraged at the respect shown him by his soldiers and people in general, on account of his virtue. The troops having declared for *Alexander Severus*, after several proceedings on both sides, massacred *Heliogabalus* and his mother *Samis*. Their dead bodies, after being exposed to the insults of the people, were dragged through the streets and, thrown into the Tiber.

Q. *Alexander Severus* then succeeded his cousin *Heliogabalus* ?

A. Yes ; and proved one of the wisest and most moderate Emperors that ever reigned. A historian, who lived in his time, and who is by no means inclined to favor him, reproaches him only with having too much deference for his mother, *Mamea*, a reproach which certainly does honour to *Alexander Severus* ; this Empress being a woman estimable for her virtues, and, according to the testimony of some writers, having professed Christianity.

Q. *Alexander Severus* could not then have been unacquainted with our holy religion ?

A. Whether from false politics or want of light cannot be said, but it is certain that this Emperor made a strange mixture of Christianity and paganism. He had a chapel in his palace where he paid honor to the images of *Apollonius*

of *Tyanus*, the celebrated Pythagorean philosopher, to those of *Jesus Christ*, *Abraham*, and *Orpheus*. In his reign the Christians sustained no persecution.

Q. Do the pagan authors record any other circumstance that supports the opinion that he favored Christianity?

A. He caused the following remarkable words, very similar to those of the Evangelist, to be inscribed on marble in several places, and proclaimed throughout his army: "Do not unto others what you would not they should do unto you." During the fourteen years of his reign, *Alexander Severus* did not spill the blood of a single human creature.

Q. Have you any thing further to add?

A. A pagan author asserts that he projected the design of building temples to *Jesus Christ*, and that the Emperor *Adrian* before him had entertained the same intention, but that the pagan priests opposed it, and represented to him, that if temples were erected to *Jesus Christ*, those of the other divinities would be entirely neglected.

Q. Was the reign of *Alexander Severus* signalized by any great event?

A. The empire of the Parthians, which was founded by *Asaces*, as already mentioned in the eighth Period of the First Part, was entirely extinct in the reign of this Emperor, Anno Domini, two hundred and twenty seven, or eight.

Q. In what manner did it finish?

A. A Persian of low extraction, who assumed the name of *Artaxerxes*, excited the Persians to rebel against *Artabanes*, the last King of the race of the *Arfacide*, and having defeated him, ascended the throne, and restored the nation to its ancient authority. This *Artaxerxes* was one of the Magii, a worshipper of fire; his descendants reigned in Persia till toward the middle of the seventh century.

Q. Was this action productive of any other consequences?

A. *Artaxerxes*, intoxicated with his success, made incursions into the provinces of the Roman empire. *Alen-*

ander marched against him, and having vanquished, obliged him to retire, after which he returned to Rome, which he entered in triumph.

Q. Did *Alexander Severus* make any other expedition?

A. He made one into Germany, where he perished at the age of twenty nine years and three months, after a reign of little more than thirteen years, Anno Domini three hundred and twenty five.

Q. How did he die?

A. He was encamped near Mayence, and the strict discipline he kept up in his army disgusting some of his soldiers, they were easily excited by *Maximin*, a man of low birth, whom *Alexander Severus* had raised to the first military honors, to murder both him and his mother, who had accompanied him in the expedition. Having executed their horrid purpose, they immediately nominated *Maximin*, the man who of all others least deserved this high dignity, as his successor.

Q. Did the senate approve this election?

A. Far from approving it, they exerted their utmost efforts to deliver themselves from the tyranny of *Maximin*, who rendered himself still more detestable by his cruelty, and who, following the example of the other tyrants, his predecessors, did not fail to persecute the Christians.

Q. What method did the senate take to free themselves from the tyranny of *Maximin*?

A. A Roman senator, far advanced in years, named *Gordian*, who was proconsul in Africa, was proclaimed Emperor in that country by his soldiers, and associated his son, who bore the same name, in the empire. The news being come to Rome, the senate acknowledged the two *Gordians* as emperors, and drove out of the city all those who adhered to the party of *Maximin*.

Q. The two *Gordians* then jointly possessed the empire?

A. They enjoyed it only in Africa, and that for the short space of a year: a man, named *Capellianus*, attached to the party of *Maximin*, defeated their army; upon which the elder *Gordian* strangled himself, and his son was killed in battle.

Q. What happened at Rome upon the arrival of this news ?

A. There was at the time in the city a youth, grandson of the elder *Gordian* ; on him the senate bestowed the empire, and put him under the care of two senators, named *Balbinus* and *Pupienus*, to whom they equally gave the title of Emperors.

Q. How did *Maximin* act during this time ?

A. He attempted to enter Italy with a great army, fully resolved to revenge himself on the senate ; but having stopped in his way to besiege *Aquileia*, his soldiers revolted, and killed both him and his son ; after which his whole army submitted to the senate.

Q. Did *Balbinus* and *Pupienus* preserve their authority long ?

A. They preserved it at the most a year. Having conceived the design of murdering young *Gordian*, the soldiers, incensed, murdered them both ; and *Gordian*, who was still very young, remained sole possessor of the empire, Anno Domini two hundred and thirty eight.

Q. In what terms does history speak of this young prince ?

A. All authors agree that he was an excellent prince, much inclined to virtue.

Q. Did he reign long ?

A. He reigned only six years, being killed, Anno Domini two hundred and forty four, by an Arab, named *Philip*, who after this murder usurped the empire.

Q. What account do historians give of *Philip* ?

A. As his reign began with a crime, it can be little deserving of praise ; nor has any historian given a testimony in his favour.

Q. Have not some ancient authors, nevertheless, asserted that *Philip* professed Christianity ?

A. They have ; but the fact is very doubtful. However it be, it is certain he by no means deserved to bear the name of a Christian.

Q. Did nothing memorable happen during his reign ?

A. Anno Domini two hundred and forty eight, and the fourteenth year of his reign, this Emperor celebrated

two magnificent games, on account of its being the thousandth year of the foundation of Rome.

Q. What was the end of *Philip*?

A. He was killed at Verona by his own soldiers, and the same happened at Rome to his son, whom he had associated with him in the empire, Anno Domini two hundred and forty nine.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. The Emperor *Decius*, a violent persecutor of the Christians.

Q. Did he reign long?

A. About a year and a half; he perished miserably in an engagement with the Goths. It is worthy observation, that almost all the princes who persecuted the Christians came to an untimely end.

Q. There were, it is to be presumed, many martyrs at this time?

A. Yes; one of the most illustrious was *St. Cyprian*, Bishop of Carthage, equally celebrated for his piety and eloquence: his works, written in Latin, are still extant.

Q. Who succeeded *Decius*?

A. *Trebonianus Gallus* and *Volusian*, his son. These two Emperors reigned from the year two hundred and fifty one to two hundred and fifty four.

Q. How did their reign conclude?

A. *Emilianus*, general of their forces, revolted from them, and the soldiers, fond of novelty, murdered them to make room for the new Emperor.

Q. Did *Emilianus* enjoy the empire long?

A. He enjoyed it only three months, and in his turn, perished by the perfidy of the same soldiers who had raised him to the empire.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. The Emperor *Valerian*, who made his son *Galienus* partner in the empire.

Q. Was *Valerian* favourable to the Christians?

A. He was one of their most violent persecutors. About the fourth year of his reign, the great *St. Cyprian*, of whom we have before spoken, by his orders suffered martyrdom at Carthage, Anno Domini two hundred and fifty eight.

Q. Was the reign of *Valerian* happy ?

A. By no means ; the empire had never been in a worse state. The armies and provinces revolted on all sides, and there were at this time no less than thirty different Emperors, whose actions a Latin historian (*Trebellius Pollio*) has written under the title of "The History of the Thirty Tyrants."

Q. Was the end of *Valerian* equally unfortunate as that of other persecutors ?

A. Yes ; he was taken prisoner by *Sapor*, King of Persia, upon whom he made war, and died in captivity, having suffered the most cruel and unworthy treatment.

Q. What step did the Emperor *Galenus* take to deliver his father ?

A. So far from exerting himself to effect his deliverance, he was pleased with the opportunity of governing alone, and abandoned himself to an effeminate and voluptuous life. He reigned seven years jointly with his father, and eight alone.

Q. What was his end ?

A. He was killed by the soldiers of *Aurelian*, one of his generals, who by this treason aimed at the empire ; which, however, he was unable to retain, being defeated by *Claudius*, surnamed the *Goth*, who succeeded the Emperor *Galenus*.

Q. From whence did *Claudius* derive his surname ?

A. From the victory he obtained over a numerous army of Goths, who had made an irruption into the provinces of the Roman empire. This Emperor, who possessed many virtues, reigned only two years, dying of a contagious sickness, Anno Domini two hundred and seventy.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. The Emperor *Aurelian*, a very valiant prince, who took the city of Palmira in Arabia*, and led in triumph its Queen, the celebrated *Zenobia*.

Q. Who was she ?

A. The widow of a brave officer, named *Odenatus*, who, Anno Domini two hundred and sixty four, having

* Some authors place this city in Syria.

defeated the Persians, under the reign of *Gaius*, received from that prince the title of Emperor, which he preserved during his life, and which *Zenobia* endeavoured to maintain after his death.

Q. Was *Aurelian* a good prince?

A. His too great severity prevented his being beloved; besides which he was extremely superstitious.

Q. How did he die?

A. He was killed, Anno Domini two hundred and seventy five, the fiftieth year of his reign, by the treachery of one of his private secretaries, named *Mastibens*.

Q. How was the empire disposed of after the death of *Aurelian*?

A. An event happened without parallel in the annals of history: the soldiers, rendered wise by experience, resolved not to elect a new Emperor, but to cede their right to the Roman senate, who, after an interregnum of eight months, elected a senator, named *Claudius Tacitus*, whose virtues rendered him truly worthy of the empire.

Q. Did *Tacitus* reign long?

A. He enjoyed his new dignity only six months, at the end of which he died a natural death. *Flavian*, his brother, seized upon the empire, which he preserved about two months, at the end of which he was killed by the soldiers.

Q. To whom did the empire afterwards fall?

A. To *Marcus Aurelius Probus*, who reigned only six months, at the end of which he was slain by the soldiers, Anno Domini two hundred and eighty two.

Q. What was the character of *Probus*?

A. He was one of the most valiant and wise princes that ever reigned in Rome. The sole reason of the soldiers putting him to death was his exercising stricter discipline, and obliging them to live with more regularity than under the preceding Emperors.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. *Marcus Aurelius Carus*, a native of Narbonne in France, who having joined his two sons, *Carinus* and *Numerianus*, with him in the command, led an army into Persia, where he was killed by lightning in his tent, Anno Domini two hundred and eighty three.

Q. Did his sons reign after him ?

A. *Numerianus* survived him only a year, being killed by *Aper*, his father in law ; and *Carinus* perished a year afterwards, defeated by the troops of *Dioclesian*, a soldier of fortune, who was elected Emperor by his army, Anno Domini two hundred and eighty four.

Q. What was the character of *Dioclesian* ?

A. He was a man of understanding and valour, but haughty and cruel. He was the first, or rather the only Emperor, who made his subjects kiss his feet, a detestable homage, which the Bishops of Rome afterwards exacted from their followers. *Dioclesian* entertained an invincible hatred against Christianity, and was of all others its most violent persecutor.

Q. Did he govern the empire alone ?

A. No ; in the year two hundred and eighty six he chose for a partner *Maximian*, surnamed *Hercules* ; and, Anno Domini two hundred and ninety two, nominated two inferior Emperors, whom he called *Cæsars* : these were *Constantius Chlorus*, grandson of the Emperor *Claudius the God*, and *Maximian*, surnamed *Armentarius*.

Q. What was the end of these associations.

A. *Dioclesian* divided the authority between these princes : they were all tyrants, the enemies of the church of Christ, except *Constantius*, who esteemed the Christian religion, and whose wife, called *Helena*, was a Christian. She was the mother of *Constantine the Great*.

FOURTH CENTURY.

Q. How many years did *Dioclesian* reign ?

A. In all twenty ; at the end of which he abdicated the empire, and obliged his colleague, *Maximian Hercules*, to do the same.

Q. What were his motives for this step ?

A. His pretence was the desire of a quiet life ; but there is reason to believe his true motive was the vexation he felt at seeing the rapid progress of Christianity, not-

withstanding all the cruelties he had employed to check it, and prevent its establishment.

Q. Who reigned after him?

A. In the year three hundred and four, which was that of *Dioclesian* and *Maximian Hercules'* abdication, *Constantius Chlorus* and *Maximian Amertorius*, who were before only *Cæsars*, were made Emperors, and divided the Roman Empire between them.

Q. How was this division made?

A. *Constantius Chlorus*, who was a virtuous prince, and moderate in his desires, contented himself with Gaul and Great Britain, and *Maximian* had the rest of the empire, where he nominated two *Cæsars*, *Severus* and *Galerius Maximian*: the latter was the son of one of his sisters.

Q. Did *Constantius* on his side create no *Cæsars*?

A. He raised to that dignity, which then marked the succession to the empire, his son *Constantine*, a prince who gave great promise of future greatness. This happened Anno Domini three hundred and six.

Q. Did *Constantius* live long after this?

A. He expired almost immediately after, at York, in the arms of his son, who, the following year, took the title of *Augustus*, which he received from his father-in-law, the Emperor *Maximian*.

Q. In what year was *Constantine* born?

A. In the year of Christ two hundred and seventy three, so that he attained the empire at the age of thirty three.

Q. Did not the Franks begin to make a figure towards the close of this century?

A. Yes; towards the year two hundred and seventy seven they rendered themselves masters of *Batavia*, and remained in possession of it for more than a century.

Q. Who were the Franks?

A. They were Germans, who, after a time, settled in Gaul, and became famous under the name of the *French*.

SECOND PERIOD.

FROM THE CONVERSION OF CONSTANTINE TO THE CORONATION OF CHARLEMAGNE.—488 YEARS.

Q. In what year did *Constantine* embrace Christianity?

A. In the year three hundred and twelve.

Q. What was the cause of his conversion?

A. It is to be presumed that his mother, who was a Christian, early inspired him with a veneration for the Christian religion; but he was induced to make an open avowal of his sentiments by a miracle, an account of which a cotemporary historian, who has written his life, is said to have received from his own mouth.*

Q. What was the miracle?

A. Soon after *Constantine* was declared Emperor, *Maxentius*, a man of depraved morals, who was then at Rome, got himself declared *Augustus* by the Pretorian soldiers, founding his pretensions on his being the son of *Maximian Herectus*. *Constantine* marched against him, and was encouraged to engage, by a luminous cross which appeared in the heavens, with this inscription in Greek characters: "In this thou shalt conquer."

Q. And was he really victorious?

A. He gained a signal victory; *Maxentius* was killed, and *Constantine* remained a peaceable possessor of the empire.

Q. How did he conduct himself afterwards?

A. His first object was to restore peace to the Christian church, which had, for a great number of years, endured the most violent persecutions.

Q. Did he reign alone?

* "Whether his eyes were all at once opened by a supernatural light, or the Christians, who had grown very numerous, appeared to him proper instruments for his designs, ambitious men making even religion a political machine, he declared himself in favour of Christianity, and fixed the monogram of Jesus Christ on the *Labarum*, which became the principal standard of the Romans."

Abbé Millot.

2. At the beginning of his reign he chose for a colleague *Licinius*, to whom he had given in marriage his sister *Constance*, a Christian princess; but *Licinius*, revolting from *Constantine*, and beginning to persecute the Christians, was defeated and slain by the Emperor, Anno Domini three hundred and twenty four.

Q. In what state was the Christian church?

A. It would have enjoyed perfect tranquillity, had it not been for a priest of Alexandria, named *Arius*, who introduced new opinions concerning the divinity of *Jesus Christ*, and occasioned great troubles.

Q. What was the remedy opposed to the disorders caused by this heresy?

A. *Constantine*, zealous for the repose of the church, assembled a council of Bishops from all parts of the Roman Empire at Nice, in the year three hundred and twenty five, where the principles of *Arius* were declared contrary to holy writ, and to the faith maintained by all the churches.

Q. Did this decision terminate the difference?

A. No; Arianism subsisted in several places, till towards the close of the sixth century, when it was entirely abolished.

Q. Was *Constantine* happy in his domestic concerns?

A. He experienced a heavy affliction in the death of his son *Crispus*, caused by a false accusation of his step-mother *Fausla*, daughter to the Emperor *Maximian*.

Q. What other memorable events happened in the reign of this Emperor?

A. He enlarged the city of Byzantium in Thrace, adorned it with the spoils of all the cities of the empire, bestowed on it the names of *Constantinople* and *New Rome*, and made it the seat of the Eastern empire. This was done Anno Domini three hundred and thirty.

Q. Did *Constantine* live long after this?

A. He died Anno Domini three hundred and thirty seven, at Nicomedia, and before his death was baptised; the custom in those days being to defer, for a length of time, the baptism of those who embraced Christianity at years of maturity.

Q. Who succeeded *Constantine*?

A. His three sons, *Constantine*, *Conslans*, and *Constantius*. *Constantine*, the eldest, had Gaul and the Western provinces; *Conslans*, the youngest, had Rome, Italy, Sicily, and Africa; and *Constantius*, the second of the three brothers, had Asia, the Eastern provinces, and Egypt.

Q. Had *Constantine the Great* no other relations?

A. He had two brothers, *Constantius* and *Dalmatius*, the first of whom was the father of *Julian*, surnamed the *Apostate*, who reigned after the death of *Constantius*, the second son of *Constantine*.

Q. What became of the brothers of *Constantine*?

A. Immediately after the death of the Emperor, the soldiers murdered them by the orders, it is generally supposed, of young *Constantius*. *Julian* and his brother *Gallus* with difficulty escaped the cruelty of the soldiers, and the hatred of the new Emperor, their cousin german.

Q. Did the sons of *Constantine* reign amicably?

A. Discord soon disunited them. *Constantine*, attempting to invade the territories of his brother, was defeated and killed near Aquilia, Anno Domini three hundred and forty; and ten years afterwards *Conslans* was murdered by some of his officers, who had revolted from him. These regicides assumed the title of Emperors; but *Constantius*, the second son of *Constantine*, having vanquished them after several engagements, remained sole possessor of the Roman empire.

Q. What happened remarkable during the reign of *Constantius*?

A. This prince favoured the sect of the Arians. He prosecuted a successful war against the Persians, and would have conducted himself with great prudence, had he not yielded too implicitly to the counsels of his courtiers, who made their advantage of his indolence and negligence.

Q. What became of his cousins *Gallus* and *Julian*?

A. *Constantius* had nominated *Gallus* Cæsar, under the name of *Constantius Gallus*; but this prince, who was extremely cruel and ferocious, by his ill conduct obliged *Constantius* to put him to death, Anno Domini three hundred and fifty four.

Q. How did *Julian* conduct himself?

A. He affected to prefer a quiet and retired life, applied himself closely to study, and became very learned. His frequent intercourse with several pagan philosophers, it is conjectured, corrupted him, and led him secretly to renounce the Christian religion, in which he had been educated from his infancy.

Q. By what means did he attain the empire?

A. The Germans, who inhabited the neighbourhood of the Rhine having begun a war upon the Romans, *Julian* was nominated Cæsar by the Emperor, who gave him the command of an army which he sent into that country. In this war *Julian* signalized his courage, and so effectually gained the affections of the soldiers, that they revolted from *Constantius*, and proclaimed him Emperor.

Q. What steps did *Constantius* take when he was informed of this insurrection?

A. He set out with an army to suppress it, but fell sick on his march, and died at Mopsuestia, a town in Cilicia. All now came over to the party of *Julian*, who made a pompous funeral for his predecessor, and took possession of the empire with a moderation that was universally admired.

Q. By this it appears that *Julian* had great qualities?

A. It cannot, without injustice, be denied that he had. He was just, disinterested, chaste, sober, valiant, and learned; happy had he not stained his character by an inveterate hatred to Christianity, which he resolved to abolish throughout the Roman dominions.

Q. Did he not attempt to rebuild the Temple of Jerusalem.

A. Yes; apparently with the view of disproving the prophecies of *Jesus Christ*; but God opposed his wicked attempt; for while the foundations of that edifice were digging, there issued from the earth flames of fire, which destroyed the workmen*. This fact is attested by several authors, and especially by a pagan writer, who at that time lived at the court of the Emperor *Julian*.

Q. In what year did *Julian* attain the empire, and how long did he enjoy it?

* See Warburton's work on this subject.

A. He was nominated *Cæsar* towards the close of the year three hundred and fifty five, and was proclaimed Emperor at Paris, Anno Domini three hundred and sixty. He died three years after in an expedition against the Persians, aged thirty one.

Q. How did he die?

A. He was stabbed as he was animating his troops to combat, but it is not known by whom. As he had vowed to his false gods the ruin of Christianity on his return from this Persian expedition, feeling himself mortally wounded, he filled his hand with his blood, and sprinkling it toward Heaven, pronounced these impious words : "Thou hast conquered, Galilean."

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. The Emperor *Jovian*, a pious Christian prince, who reestablished the Christians in all the privileges the Emperor *Constantine* had granted them. He was a native of Hungary.

Q. Did he reign long?

A. Only eight months : his death was occasioned by a melancholy accident, for some charcoal being lighted in the apartment where he slept, to dry the walls, which had a short time before been plaistered with lime, it was accidentally left there, and he was stifled by the vapour. He was then only thirty three years of age.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. The Emperor *Valentinian*, who was also a Pannonian. He had been persecuted on account of religion under *Julian*. He took his brother *Valens* for a partner in the empire, and ceded to him the Eastern provinces, reserving to himself the dominion of the West. This partition of the empire took place Anno Domini three hundred and sixty four.

Q. What was the character of *Valentinian*?

A. He was a prince of great abilities, wise, virtuous, and learned. He died of an apoplexy during the war with the Sarmatians, the twelfth year of his reign, Anno Domini three hundred and seventy five, at the age of about fifty five.

Q. Did he leave any posterity?

A. He left two sons, the eldest, named *Gratian*,

whom he had, during his life, proclaimed Augustus ; and the younger, called *Valentinian*, whom the soldiers raised to the same dignity, six days after the death of his father.

Q. Did *Valens*, who reigned in the East, imitate the virtues of his brother *Valentinian* ?

A. No ; his vices, and especially his cruelty, rendered him universally detested. Almost the whole of his reign he was at war with the Goths ; at length, in an engagement near Adrianople, Anno Domini three hundred and seventy eight, he was wounded by an arrow, and withdrawing to the hut of a peasant, was there burnt alive by the Goths, who set fire to it. He had reigned fourteen years, and died at the age of fifty.

Q. In what state was the Roman empire afterwards ?

A. *Gratian* was charged with the whole weight of the empire, his brother *Valentinian*, who was then only fourteen years of age, being unable to lend him any assistance on account of his youth. *Gratian* had a good understanding and many excellent qualities, but he hated business, and withdrew himself from the administration of public affairs.

Q. It is to be presumed then that he did not govern the empire alone ?

A. No ; he took for a colleague *Theodosius*, surnamed the Great, by birth a Spaniard, and sent him into the East with an army against the Goths, who at that time ravaged Thrace and all the neighbouring provinces with impunity. This happened at the beginning of the year three hundred and seventy nine.

Q. Did *Theodosius* conclude this war ?

A. He vanquished the Goths in several engagements, and at length obliged them and their King to submit to the empire of Rome.

Q. Did not *Theodosius* signalize himself by other brilliant actions ?

A. His reign was a continued series of victories. He defeated and put to death the tyrant *Maximus*, who had got himself proclaimed Emperor, and established his residence at Treves, after having caused the Emperor *Gratian* to be murdered ; and he reestablished young *Valentinian*, whom the faction of the same tyrant had obliged to leave

Italy. This event happened Anno Domini three hundred and eighty eight, and the sixteenth year of the tyranny of *Maximus*.

Q. Did *Theodosius* enjoy peace after these victories ?

A. No ; in the year three hundred and ninety one, a man of obscure birth, named *Eugenius*, supported the revolt of a celebrated Gaulish general, who called himself *Arbogastus*, and caused *Valentinian* to be strangled at Vienne in Dauphiny : *Theodosius* marching into Italy, engaged *Eugenius*, vanquished and put him to death. These two rebels had resolved to reestablish paganism.

Q. Did this conclude the victories of *Theodosius* ?

A. Yes ; and in some measure his life. *Eugenius* was vanquished, Anno Domini three hundred and ninety four, and *Theodosius* died at Milan in the month of January, three hundred and ninety five, after having reigned sixteen years, and lived, according to some authors, rather more than fifty.

Q. What happened in this century among the Franks, while they were masters of Batavia ?

A. They were engaged in defending themselves against the attacks of the Saxons and divers barbarous nations, which, falling upon that country, afterwards penetrated farther into the Roman empire. At length, towards the year four hundred and sixty three the, Franks remained sole masters of these territories.

Q. What became of the Batavians ?

A. They were either incorporated with the people who occupied their country, or settled elsewhere, so that no other trace of them remains than the name.

FIFTH CENTURY.

Q. Into whose hands did the empire fall after the death of *Theodosius* ?

A. He left it to his two sons, *Arcadius* and *Honorius*. The former, who was eighteen years of age, had the Eastern empire for his portion ; and the latter, who was only eleven, had the empire of the West.

Q. What were the characters of these two Emperors.

A. They were both little deserving of the rank to which they were elevated. The empire, it must be owned, reaped little advantage or honor from the family of *Theodosius*; on the contrary, it was at this time that it began rapidly to decline, both in the East and West.

Q. Did *Arcadius* live long?

A. No; he died, Anno Domini four hundred and eight, leaving a son named *Theodosius*, who is generally surnamed the *younger*. This son, adopting a political manœuvre of which he would hardly have been thought capable, he left under the tuition of *Jezdegerd*, king of Persia, who doing honor to his choice, did not make war on the Romans during the minority of his pupil.

Q. What was the conduct of *Honorius*?

A. He passed his life in indolence and luxury; sometimes at Rome, and sometimes at Ravenna; wholly governed by *Stilicho*, his father in law, a Goth by birth, and a man of great valour and large possessions, but whose ambition involved himself and family in ruin.

Q. By what means did this happen?

A. He had several times vanquished the Gauls, who threatened to invade Italy; but at length entering into a secret treaty with one of their Kings, named *Alaric*, and having made the Emperor *Honorius* cede to him Gaul and Spain, he attempted to raise his son *Eucherius* to the empire; but the conspiracy being discovered, *Honorius* caused him, his wife, and son to be put to death, Anno Domini four hundred and nine.

Q. What events succeeded?

A. The Emperor having contemptuously rejected a new alliance which *Alaric* had proposed, so incensed the barbarian, that he marched an army to Rome, which he took and pillaged, Anno Domini four hundred and ten. This was one of the most severe misfortunes the Roman empire had ever experienced.

Q. Were the Goths Christians at this time?

A. They were Christians of the sect of *Arius*, and their King was strongly attached to his religion.

Q. Did they keep possession of Rome?

A. No ; they contented themselves with pillaging it ; and *Alaric* carried off *Placidia*, the sister of *Honorius*. This monarch dying a short time after, *Ataulpha*, his brother and successor, pillaged Rome a second time, and married *Placidia*, whom he took with him into Spain.

Q. The Roman empire must have been at this time in a deplorable state ?

A. It was indeed oppressed on all sides ; for independent of the Goths, other barbarous nations, as the *Alans*, the *Vandals*, and the *Suevi*, with impunity ravaged Gaul, Spain, and the other provinces of the Western empire.

Q. Was the Eastern empire more tranquil ?

A. It was ; at least no mention is made of any considerable war at this time.

Q. What became of *Theodosius the Younger*, the son of *Arcadius* ?

A. In the year four hundred and twenty one, at the age of twenty, he married *Athenais*, the daughter of *Leon-tius*, an Athenian philosopher. This lady was a pagan, but was baptized before her marriage with the Emperor, when she changed her name to that of *Eudoxia*. This marriage was contracted by the advice of *Pulcheria*, the eldest sister of *Theodosius*.

Q. Did nothing remarkable occur in the reign of this Emperor ?

A. The Eastern empire enjoyed peace almost during the whole of it ; but the church was disturbed by the factions of the prelates of Alexandria. Under the reign of *Arcadius*, *Theophilus*, Patriarch of that city, had cruelly persecuted *St. John Chrysostom*, one of the most pious prelates of the East, and sent him into exile ; and these factions raged with still greater violence under the feeble government of *Theodosius the Younger*.

Q. Explain this more at large ?

A. The Emperor had created Bishop of Constantinople a priest of Antioch, named *Nestorius*, who, from a scruple of conscience, objected to the calling of the Virgin Mary the Mother of God, he substituted the words mother of *Christ*, from the fear of confounding the divine with the human nature of our Lord. This raised a dispute, which subsisted for a great number of years.

Q. How so ?

A. *Cyrille*, patriarch of Alexandria, dissented from him, and being supported by the credit of the Bishop of Rome and of the Emperor, found means to assemble a council at Ephesus, where *Nestorius* was condemned and anathematized. Several prelates, nevertheless, declared in his favour, and there are still in the East a great number of *Nestorians*, who are in possession of several populous churches. The council of Ephesus was held Anno Domini four hundred and thirty one.

Q. Did *Theodosius* live long after ?

A. He died, Anno Domini four hundred and fifty, after a reign the least fruitful in events of any we find in the annals of history.

Q. How did *Honorius*, during this time, conduct himself in Italy ?

A. He tranquilly beheld the approaching ruin of the empire, almost insensible to every reverse ; though he saw continually rising to dispute it with him new Emperors, whom he feebly opposed, leaving his defence solely to the care of his officers.

Q. What became of *Ataulpha*, King of the Goths, who married *Placidia*, the sister of *Honorius* ?

A. He was killed by one of his subjects at Barcelona, Anno Domini four hundred and fifteen ; and his successor sent *Placidia* back to *Honorius*, who, in the year four hundred and seventeen, married her, against her inclination, to one of his officers, named *Constantius*. The fruit of this marriage was *Valentinian the Younger*, who was afterwards Emperor : he was born Anno Domini four hundred and eighteen.

Q. Did not *Honorius*, in consequence of this marriage, invest *Constantius* with some dignity ?

A. He made him his colleague in the empire, a dignity which he enjoyed but a short time, as he died the seventh of the following month.

Q. Did *Honorius* live long ?

A. He died, Anno Domini four hundred and twenty three, at the age of thirty five, little esteemed, beloved, of regretted.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. His nephew, *Valentine III.* who was then only in his fifth year. *Placidia*, his mother, retired with him into the East, from whence *Theodosius the Younger*, after the death of *Honorius*, sent him into Italy to take possession of the empire.

Q. What memorable events belong to this period?

A. *Genseric*, King of the Vandals, abandoned a great part of Spain, which had submitted to him, and marched into Africa at the head of eighty thousand men. He rendered himself master of Carthage, and all that the Romans possessed in that quarter, and founded a monarchy there, which subsisted till towards the middle of the sixth century. This prince, as also the Vandals, his subjects, ~~was an~~ Arian. The beginning of this expedition falls in with the year of our Lord, four hundred and twenty seven.

Q. Were there no other revolutions in the Roman empire?

A. The century of which we are now speaking was a period of the most signal revolutions. The Goths settled in Spain; the Vandals, as it has been already observed, in Africa; the Franks, or French, in Gaul; and the Anglo Saxons, or English, in Great Britain. Such was the decline of the Roman empire.

Q. What was the origin of the kingdom of the Goths in Spain?

A. This subject has been slightly touched upon in our account of *Alaric*, and *Atualpha*, his brother; but, strictly speaking, this kingdom did not begin till *Wallia*, the successor of *Atualpha*, to whom the Romans ceded Spain and Languedoc. The Gothic Kings, his successors, preserved the kingdom till the beginning of the eighth century, as will be seen hereafter.

Q. What other event occurred in this century?

A. The foundation and establishment of the Republic of Venice, to which the disorders of Italy gave rise. Some inhabitants of Padua, with the view of escaping the fury of the Goths, in four hundred and twenty one, built a few houses in the Isle of Rialto: this was the origin of Venice, the most ancient of all the modern republics.

Q. How was the monarchy of France founded?

A. The Franks were a nation of Germans, celebrated

or their valour, and situated between the Elbe and the Rhine. The names of its ancient Kings are not handed down to us ; the list usually begins with *Pharamond*, who was succeeded by *Clodian*, *Meroue*, and *Childeric*. The power of these princes, who were pagans, extended little beyond the Rhine ; the first who completely established his dominion in Gaul was *Glovis*, whose reign did not begin till the year four hundred and eighty two.

Q. Give me some account of the Anglo Saxons ?

A. *Maximus*, the tyrant of whom we have before spoken, had the government of the Island of Britain, now usually called England, for the Romans ; but withdrawing from it, and carrying with him all the troops of the country, he left it a prey to the Northern barbarians, whom the Romans had never been able effectually to quell.

Q. What connection had this with the settlement of the Anglo Saxons ?

A. The Britons, driven to the last extremity by their enemies the Picts, and receiving no aid from the Romans, had recourse to the English, or Anglo Saxons, a nation of Germans, who had hitherto rendered themselves famous only by their piracies. These people landed in the Isle of Britain about the year four hundred and forty seven, and after having subdued the Picts, turned their arms against the Britons, and rendered themselves masters of the country.

Q. Were the Britons wholly exterminated ?

A. No ; a party of them crossed the sea, and went into Armorican Gaul, where they seized upon the province that is now called Brittany. Others took refuge in the mountains of Wales, where their descendants still exist. The Britons and the Welch for a long time preserved the manners of their ancestors.

Q. These revolutions no doubt caused great alterations ?

A. Yes ; especially with respect to civilization and letters, which were almost every where destroyed. Add to this, the barbarians were either pagans, as the Franks and Anglo Saxons, or Arians, as the Goths and Vandals ; so that they were all enemies of the prevailing religion.

Q. Who succeeded to the empire after the death of the Emperor *Theodosius the Younger*?

A. His sister *Pulcheria* raised to that dignity an old officer, named *Marcean*, whom she had married, though they were both far advanced in years. They interfered scarcely with any thing except the affairs of religion, and at that time all the Eastern world was warmly engaged in religious controversy.

Q. Did *Marcian* reign long?

A. He died, Anno Domini four hundred and fifty seven, having buried his wife *Pulcheria* in the year four hundred and fifty three.

Q. Did nothing memorable occur during the reign of *Marcian* and *Pulcheria*?

A. By their order, in the year four hundred and fifty one, at Chalcedon, a council was assembled against those who taught that there was but one nature in Jesus Christ. This was the fourth general council.

Q. Enumerate the three which preceded?

A. The council of Nice, against the Arians in the year three hundred and twenty five; the council of Constantinople in three hundred and eighty five, against the Macedonians, who denied the divinity of Jesus Christ; the council of Ephesus against *Nestorius*, in the year four hundred and forty one; and lastly, the council of Chalcedon, in the year four hundred and fifty one.

Q. Let us now return to the Western empire. In what state was it under *Valentinian III.*?

A. During his reign, *Attila*, King of the Huns, who for his cruelty was called the *Scourge of God*, ravaged Gaul and Italy, and put all the inhabitants to flight. This barbarous prince died on the night of his nuptials of a vomiting of blood, caused by excess of drinking.

Q. Did *Valentinian* survive him?

A. He was killed the same year at the age of thirty five, by *Petrônus Maximus*, one of his officers, who married *Eudoxia*, his widow, and was made Emperor in his stead.

Q. Did this murder go unpunished?

A. No; *Eudoxia* secretly invited into Italy *Genseric*, King of the Vandals in Africa. This prince arrived by

sea with a large army, took and pillaged Rome, killed *Maximus*, and carried away *Eudoxia*, to marry her to *Huneric*, his son and successor.

Q. Who reigned in the West after the death of *Valentinian III*?

A. Independant of *Maximus*, who has been already mentioned, several Emperors reigned in the West, but with no great eclat, all the provinces, except Italy, being occupied by the barbarians.

Q. Can you name these Emperors?

A. *Avitus*, a Gaul, in the year four hundred and fifty five : he reigned little more than fourteen months. *Majorianus*, who having reigned four years and some months, was killed Anno Domini four hundred and sixty one. *Severus*, who was poisoned, after a reign of four years, Anno Domini four hundred and sixty five. *Atbenius* who reigned five years, and was killed Anno Domini four hundred and seventy two.

Q. What occasioned the tragical end of these Emperors?

A. The ambition of one single man, named *Ricimer*, a senator, and generalissimo of the troops, who by these murders himself aspired to the empire.

Q. Did he attain it?

A. No ; he proclaimed one *Olybrius* Emperor, Anno Domini four hundred and seventy two. A short time after *Ricimer* died, and *Olybrius* soon followed him, having reigned but seven months. *Glycerius* succeeded him, and reigned only four months, having renounced the empire, which was an incumbrance to him, for a bishopric. His successor, *Julius Nepos*, was killed by a Goth, named *Orestes*, who made one of his sons, furnished *Augustulus*, Emperor.

Q. What was the fate of *Augustulus*?

A. The empire of the West ended with him. *Odoacer*, King of the Heruli, seized upon Italy, after having killed *Orestes*, and banished *Augustulus*, from whom he thought he had little to fear, into Campania. This happened Anno Domini four hundred and seventy six.

Q. Let us now return to the Eastern empire. Who succeeded *Marcian*?

A. *Leo*, a Thracian, who reigned seventeen years, and effected nothing memorable during his whole reign. He died Anno Domini four hundred and seventy four.

Q. Did he leave no posterity ?

A. One of his daughters, named *Ariadne*, whom he had given in marriage to *Zeno*, an officer in his army, had a son who bore the name of *Leo*, and succeeded him.

Q. What was the fate of this prince ?

A. Having attained the empire, he was crowned, by *Zeno*, his father, but died ten months after, so that *Zeno* remained sole Emperor.

Q. Was the reign of *Zeno* fortunate ?

A. No ; in the beginning of it *Basiliscus*, brother in law to *Leo I.* seized the empire, Anno Domini four hundred and seventy six, and forced *Zeno* to withdraw into the province of Isauria, the place of his birth.

Q. Did *Basiliscus* enjoy the empire long ?

A. For the short space of a year. *Zeno* was recalled, and confined *Basiliscus* in a castle at Cappadocia, where he caused him to be starved to death.

Q. Did *Zeno* reign peaceably afterwards ?

A. No ; the ecclesiastical factions and controversies having reduced the empire to a deplorable state of wretchedness, *Zeno* endeavoured to procure peace, and this rendered him odious to both parties, who were continually raising up new adversaries to oppose him. These opposite factions caused the historians of that time to differ much respecting the character of this prince.

Q. Did he reign long ?

A. He reigned till the year four hundred and ninety one. It is said that he was buried alive in an epileptic fit by his wife *Ariadne*.

Q. Who was his successor ?

A. *Anastasius*, who married his widow.

Q. Was he a good prince ?

A. The ecclesiastics have greatly blackened his character, on account of his favouring that party which confounded the two natures of Jesus Christ in one : however, he carried on a successful war against the Persians and Bulgarians, who at that time began to ravage Thrace, and

applied himself to easing the burdens of the people by suppressing the most grievous imposts.

Q. Before you close this century, give me some particulars concerning the affairs of the West.

A. In the year four hundred and ninety one, *Clovis*, King of France, embraced the Christian religion, and was baptized at Rheims in Champagne. In Italy *Theodoric*, King of the Ostrogoths, defeated *Odoacer*, and having killed him, reigned in his stead.

SIXTH CENTURY.

Q. Did the Emperor *Anastasius* reign long?

A. He reigned twenty seven years, and died at the age of eighty eight, Anno Domini five hundred and eighteen. *Ariadne*, his wife, died in the year five hundred and fifteen, at the age of sixty.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. The Emperor *Justin*, a native of Thrace. He was a man of low birth, and could neither read nor write, but has, nevertheless, passed for a good prince.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. A little more than nine years, dying Anno Domini five hundred and twenty seven?

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Justinian*, a son of his sister; *Justin* had nominated him Cæsar in the year five hundred and twenty four.

Q. In what state were the affairs of Italy?

A. *Theodoric*, who possessed it, had governed till this time with great mildness and prudence: but towards the conclusion of his reign he became suspicious and cruel, and committed many bad actions.

Q. Can you recount any of them?

A. He put to death the illustrious Christian philosopher *Boëthius*, and *Symmachus*, his father in law, both the most noble and the richest Romans of that time.

Q. On what pretence did he condemn them?

A. On a false accusation of attempting to reestablish the liberty of Rome. Their defence was not attended to.

and they suffered death Anno Domini five hundred and twenty three. *Theodoric* also put to death at Ravenna *John*, Bishop of Rome, and committed divers other cruel and unjust actions.

Q. When did he die ?

A. In five hundred and twenty six, in the thirty fifth year of his reign. It is said, that seeing the head of a large fish served at his table, he fancied he beheld the head of *Symmachus*, and the agitation of his conscience, it is supposed, hastened his death.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Athalaric*, the son of his daughter *Amalasonta*. This prince remained under the tuition of his mother, being only eight years of age.

Q. Did *Clouis* continue to reign in France ?

A. No ; he died in the year five hundred and eleven, at the age of forty five. He also stained the latter part of his reign by various cruelties, having put to death the greater part of his relations. His kingdom was divided among his children, and we shall hereafter give an enumeration of his successors till *Charlemagne*.

Q. Let us now return to the Eastern empire. What have you to say of the Emperor *Justinian* ?

A. His reign was memorable on various accounts, and in particular for its signal victories, almost entirely due to *Belisarius*, one of the greatest military men that ever appeared in either empire.

Q. Recount some of them ?

A. *Belisarius* first defeated the Persians in the years five hundred and twenty nine and five hundred and thirty. The inhabitants of Constantinople having revolted from *Justinian* and proclaimed *Hypatius*, grandson of the Emperor *Anastasius*, Emperor, *Belisarius* took up arms, and reestablished *Justinian* on the throne. This sedition was so violent, that *Justinian* was on the point of taking to flight : in order to repress it, *Belisarius* caused thirty thousand men to be put to death in the city of Constantinople.

Q. Continue the recital of his exploits ?

A. In the year five hundred and thirty three, he conquered Africa, of which the Vandals, as already observed,

had taken possession, and carried away captive *Gilmer*, the last King of that nation.

Q. In what manner did *Justinian* treat the vanquished King?

A. He treated him humanely, and offered him the dignity of senator, if he would renounce Arianism; but *Gilmer* not accepting this condition, *Justinian* gave him some lands in Capadocia, where he passed the remainder of his days in peace and affluence.

Q. Is nothing more related of *Gilmer*?

A. While leading in triumph through the streets of Constantinople, and even when presented to *Justinian*, he pronounced in a solemn tone these words of Solomon:—
“Vanity! Vanity! all is Vanity!”

Q. Were these all the victories of *Belisarius*?

A. No; in the year five hundred and thirty five he went into Italy, where he vanquished the Goths, and carried their King *Vitiges* prisoner to Constantinople.

Q. How was this prince treated?

A. *Justinian*, having made him a senator, gave him some lands, and the command of his troops on the frontiers of Persia. *Belisarius* performed other great actions, which are too numerous to recount.

Q. What was the character of *Justinian*, his master?

A. It cannot be denied that he was a great prince, though he was extremely ambitious, and piqued himself a little too much on his abilities, which made him unwilling to admit a competitor. The Empress *Theodora*, his wife, who had been a comedian, injured his reputation.

Q. What were the principal actions of *Justinian*?

A. Independent of those performed under his auspices by *Belisarius*, he caused the church of St. Sophia, which passes for one of the wonders of the world, to be erected at Constantinople. This edifice, which was begun Anno Domini five hundred and thirty seven, is now converted into a Turkish mosque.

Q. Have you nothing further to add?

A. *Justinian* employed able lawyers, the principal of which was *Tribonian*, a learned pagan, to make an abstract of the ancient Roman laws. It is that which is

called the *Digest* or *Pandect*, and which is now made use of in the greater part of Europe. This abstract was made Anno Domini five hundred and thirty. The Institutes of *Justinian* appeared in five hundred and thirty three.

Q. Did the kingdom of the Ostrogoths in Italy end by the defeat of *Vitiges*?

A. No; after *Belisarius* had retired, they elected other Kings. The most renowned of these was *Totila*, who, in the year five hundred and forty, rendered himself master of all Italy, took Rome, burnt the capitol, and overthrew a third part of the walls of the city.

Q. Did the Goths remain in peaceable possession of their conquests?

A. No; *Belisarius* returning into Italy, retook Rome, and gained several advantages over them; but being recalled into the East, he left the work unfinished.

Q. What was the consequence?

A. *Totila* took Rome a second time, and *Justinian* sent against him one of his generals, named *Narses*, of Persian origin. *Narses* gave battle to *Totila*, vanquished him and put him to death, Anno Domini five hundred and fifty two. The Goths had yet another King, named *Tegas*, who was slain in battle the first year of his reign. With him the kingdom of the Ostrogoths ended in Italy, Anno Domini five hundred and fifty three.

Q. In what year did *Justinian* die?

A. In five hundred and sixty five, the thirtieth of his reign. *Theodora*, his wife, had been dead since the year five hundred and forty eight.

Q. What became of *Belisarius*?

A. Notwithstanding his great services to his country, his enemies had the address to prejudice the minds of his sovereign against him, who oftentimes disgraced him, and finally imprisoned him for seven months. He at last cleared himself of the charge alleged against him; was released; but died soon after; about eight months before the Emperor.

Q. Who succeeded *Justinian*?

A. *Justin the Younger*, the son of one of his sisters, a pious and good prince, but who entertaining a decided

version to war, found himself incapable of defending the Roman empire against *Chosroës*, King of the Persians, who at that time rendered himself formidable.

Q. What was the consequence ?

A. *Justin*, sensible of his inability, nominated *Cæsar* one of his officers, named *Tiberius*, who was his successor in the empire. This happened Anno Domini four hundred and seventy four.

Q. In what year did *Justin* die ?

A. In the year five hundred and seventy eight, having nominated *Tiberius Augustus* four days before his death.

Q. What was the character of *Tiberius* ?

A. He was a very good prince, but reigned only three years and ten months, dying Anno Domini five hundred and eighty two.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Maurice*, to whom *Tiberius* had given his daughter *Constantina* in marriage. He was a valiant, and would have been a virtuous prince, had he not sullied his best qualities by an inordinate love of money, which in the end was the occasion of his death.

Q. In what wars did *Maurice* signalize his valour ?

A. In the wars against the Persians, who were then the sole enemies of the Eastern empire. *Maurice* vanquished them in several battles, and at length granted them, in the year five hundred and eighty nine, a peace advantageous and glorious for the Roman empire.

Q. Had not *Maurice* other wars to sustain ?

A. He had one against a nation of Huns, called the Avarii, the event of which proved fatal to him. *Chaganus*, their King, having vanquished and taken some thousands of Roman soldiers prisoners, demanded a certain sum for their ransom, which *Maurice* not being willing to pay, the barbarous wretch caused them all to be massacred.

Q. How did *Maurice* receive the news of this inhuman act ?

A. He was deeply afflicted, and gave orders that prayers should be offered up in all the churches throughout his dominions, imploring the Almighty to punish his

fin rather in this life than in the next. It will be seen in the following century whether his prayer was granted. What has just been related happened Anno Domini six hundred.

Q. Inform me now what happened during this time in the Western empire?

A. The Lombards, headed by their King *Alboin*, took possession of all Italy, except Rome and Ravenna. They gave their name to Lombardy, and continued to reign there till toward the end of the eighth century.

Q. Did the reign of the Visigoths in Spain continue long?

A. In the year five hundred and eighty five, one of their Kings, named *Recareda*, was converted to the Orthodox faith, and renounced Arianism before *Leander*, Archbishop of Seville, all the nobility and people following the example of their King.

Q. Did the Anglo Saxons remain in possession of Great Britain?

A. Yes; they had till this time been pagans, but *Gregory*, surnamed the Great, sent thither some monks, the chief of whom, was one named *Augustine* to preach the Christian religion. This took place Anno Domini five hundred and ninety six.

SEVENTH CENTURY.

Q. What was the end of the Emperor *Maurice*?

A. In the beginning of the twentieth year of his reign, Anno Domini six hundred and two, *Phocas*, who was only captain of one of his bands, instigated the army to revolt, and having rendered himself master of the Emperor's person, beheaded him at Chalcedon, after having caused his five sons to be murdered before his face, the unfortunate *Maurice* at each stroke repeating this pious ejaculation, "Lord thou art just, and thy judgments are righteous."

Q. What became of his wife, the Empress *Constantina*?

A. The tyrant *Phocas* caused her to be murdered, three years after, with her three daughters, who were the sole remaining children of the Emperor *Maurice*.

Q. Did *Phocas* reign peaceably?

A. He rendered himself odious by his crimes, and afterwards by his dissolute conduct. In the year six hundred and eleven, which was the eighth of his reign, several nobles conspired against him, and having seized his person carried him prisoner to *Heracitus*, whom they had proclaimed Emperor, and who having caused his hands, feet, and afterwards his head to be cut off, commanded the soldiers to burn the rest of his body in the public square at Constantinople.

Q. Was *Heraclitus* an Emperor deserving of commendation?

A. He distinguished himself in war, and vanquished *Chosroës*, King of Persia, who had seized Palestine and Egypt; but he was by no means approved by the ecclesiastics, from having favoured the heresies of the *Monothelites*, a sect which arose in his time.

Q. In what did this heresey consist?

A. In teaching that there was but one will in Jesus Christ. It began in six hundred and thirty, and was condemned in six hundred and eighty in a council assembled at Constantinople.

Q. Was not the reign of *Heraclitus*, signalized by some other great event?

A. It was in his time that *Mahomet* began to preach his false religion. The tenets of this deceiver are contained in the Koran, which is a confused mixture of some of the truths of Judaism and Christianity, with a variety of absurd fables.

Q. Who was *Mahomet*?

A. He was a native of Mecca in Arabia, a man destitute of education, but ambitious and fanatic; and wanting neither abilities nor address to asinuate his dogmas, which he did partly by force, and partly by persuasion. The unhappy divisions which at that time prevailed among the Christians, contributed greatly to the establishment of his religion.

Q. In what year did it begin.

A. In the year six hundred and twenty two, which is called the first of the *Hegira*, or flight of *Mahomet*, when he was driven from Mecca by his fellow citizens. *Mahomet* died Anno Domini six hundred and thirty one.

Q. By what means were these fatal doctrines propagated after the death of *Mahomet*?

A. By means of the Caliphs, his successors, who in a short time made very great conquests. They were sovereigns, both in temporal and spiritual matters, and preached and recited prayers in the public mosques, holding a drawn sword in the right hand.

Q. Who were the first Caliphs?

A. *Abubeker*, Mahomet's uncle, who reigned little more than two years, and made the conquest of all Syria; *Omar*, who reigned ten years and six months, and conquered Persia and Egypt; *Ali*, Mahomet's son in law, who reigned twelve years. Almost all the succeeding Caliphs came to a tragical end.

Q. How long did the Caliphate subsist?

A. It was abolished in the thirteenth century, by the Tartars, as will be seen in its due place.

Q. In what year did the Emperor *Heracitus* die?

A. In six hundred and forty one, after a reign of twenty years and four months. He was succeeded by *Constantine* his son, whom he had by his first wife. This poor prince was poisoned the fourth month of his reign by the Empress *Martina*, his step mother.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Heracleonas*, son of *Martiana*, who reigned jointly with his mother. Their reign continued only six months, *Heracleonas* being condemned to the amputation of his nose, and his mother to that of her tongue. The senate then proclaimed *Constans*, the son of *Constantine*, and grandson of the Emperor *Heracitus*, in their stead. He began to reign, Anno Domini six hundred and forty two, and, like his grandfather, was a *Monothelite*.

Q. Was his reign fortunate?

A. No; he was vanquished in a sea engagement by the Saracens, who took possession of several parts of the Roman empire. Afterwards marching into Italy with

the design of driving out the Lombards, he was also defeated. From thence he went to Rome, which he pillaged.

Q. What was his end ?

A. Having retired into Sicily, where he remained six years, he was murdered in a bath at Syracuse by his own servants, in the twenty seventh year of his reign, Anno Domini six hundred and sixty eight.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. His son *Constantine*, surnamed *Pagonatus*. He was what was called orthodox with respect to religious disputes of the times.

Q. What happened during his reign ?

A. The Saracens besieged Constantinople during seven years, and did not retire till they had forced the Emperor to enter into an agreement to pay them an annual tribute, an agreement, however, which was never performed, the Saracen fleet being lost in its return.

Q. Did *Constantine Pagonatus* effect nothing memorable ?

A. In the year six hundred and eighty he caused a general council to be held at Constantinople against the *Monothelites*.

Q. What was the end of *Constantine Pagonatus* ?

A. He died at Constantinople, in the year six hundred and eighty five, after a reign of ten years.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. His son *Justinian II.* at the age of sixteen. He is commonly called in history *Rhinematus*, or *Cut Nose*.

Q. Whence did this surname arise ?

A. As *Justinian* governed in a cruel and disorderly manner, he became universally odious. A senator, named *Leontius*, conspired against him, and having seized his person, banished him to Taurica Chersonesus, now Crim Tartary, having first caused his nose to be cut off. This happened in the year six hundred and ninety five.

Q. Did *Leontius* reign in his stead ?

A. Yes. It was in his reign that the Saracens took Carthage, and rendered themselves masters of Africa, which from that time has always belonged to the Mahometans.

Q. Did this Emperor reign long ?

A. Only three years : having sent an army into Africa to conquer Carthage, the expedition proving unsuccessful, the soldiers fearing his displeasure, elected another Emperor, named *Apfimar*, who assumed the name of *Fiberius*. This new Emperor arriving at Constantinople, caused *Leontius'* nose to be cut off, and confined him in a monastery for the rest of his days.

Q. Did no revolution happen in the Netherlands during this century ?

A. *Dagobert I.* King of France, rendered himself master of the greater part of these provinces, drove the Frisi* out of the ancient city of Utrecht, and founded there a church or chapel. This happened between the years six hundred and twenty two and six hundred and thirty. In six hundred and ninety, *Willibrod*, an English monk, preached the Gospel in these countries.

Q. Did the Frisi embrace Christianity ?

A. No ; at least not generally, while their princes were infidels, which continued till the end of the eighth century.

Q. In what state was the republic of Venice ?

A. That republic, which had been established about two centuries, and which was considerably extended by its commerce and industry, was at this time in imminent danger from the ill government of its magistrates, who were called *Tribunes* : the authority with which the people had invested them had, in their hands, degenerated into an absolute despotism ; so that it was found necessary, in six hundred and ninety seven, to convoke a general assembly of the nation at Heraclea, where it was resolved to elect a Duke or Doge as the centre of public authority. The votes reunited in favour of *Paul Luc Anafesta*, who was the first Duke of the republic ; and from that time the state acquired more vigour, and rose to such importance, as to make head against the Roman Emperors and the Turks.

* A people of Germany in the neighbourhood of the Rhine.

PART III.

EIGHTH CENTURY.

Q. **W**HAT became of the Emperor *Justinian Rhinometus*?

A. Having escaped from his exile in *Chersonesus*, he had recourse to the Bulgarians, who furnished him with troops, by means of which he recovered the empire in the year seven hundred and five, after an exile of ten years.

Q. How did he act after his reestablishment?

A. He cruelly put to death *Apphmar* and *Leonatus*; besides which he massacred all the inhabitants of *Chersonesus*, and committed several other inhuman actions.

Q. Did they continue unpunished?

A. No; the principal nobles of Constantinople revolted, and in seven hundred and eleven elected Emperor *Bardanus Philippinus*, who put to death *Justinian*, and a son which he had that bore the name of *Tiberius*.

Q. What was the fate of this new Emperor?

A. He was a man of very depraved character, and reigned only two years and some months, being killed by a body of conspirators, the chief of whom was *Artemius*, one of the secretaries of state. This happened Anno Domini seven hundred and thirteen.

Q. What was the consequence of this assassination?

A. *Artemius* was elected Emperor, and took the name of *Anastasius*; he preserved his new dignity but a short

time, for his soldiers having revolted, he abdicated the empire, and turned monk after a reign of two years.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. One *Theodosius*, a man of little merit, who was declared Emperor by the soldiers, Anno Domini seven hundred and fifteen. Feeling his inability to reign, in seven hundred and seventeen he ceded the empire to *Leo* the *I-saurian*.

Q. Let us now return to the West. What considerable events took place there ?

A. Of France we will speak hereafter. Spain was at this time conquered by the Saracens, who having invaded that kingdom, kept possession of it till the fifteenth, and even till the sixteenth century.

Q. How and at what time was this conquest made ?

A. The Arabs, successors of *Mahomet*, having seized upon the whole coast of Africa, in the year seven hundred twelve landed a numerous army in Spain, where, after several engagements, they at length, in seven hundred and fourteen, gave battle to *Roderic*, the last King of the Visigoths, whom they defeated and killed, and thus became masters of the whole of that great kingdom.

Q. Was the Christian religion entirely annihilated in Spain ?

A. Not entirely. The Saracens granted the Christians the exercise of their religion ; and a remnant of the Goths having escaped to the mountains of Austria and Biscay, preserved their kingdom and faith.

Q. What was the name of their chief ?

A. He was called *Don Pelagius*, and was succeeded by *Don Favila*. It is conjectured they both bore the title of King, though the country that was subject to them was of very small extent : these two princes may be called the restorers of the Spanish nation.

Q. Let us now return to the Eastern empire. What have you to observe of *Leo* the *I-saurian* ?

A. He was a prince of great abilities. In the beginning of his reign he defeated the Saracens, who came to besiege Constantinople. He performed other great actions, and reestablished peace throughout Europe.

Q. Do all historians agree in commending him ?

A. The worship of images, the remains of paganism, was established almost in every part of the Eastern empire. This abuse the Emperor endeavoured to prevent, by causing them to be taken out of the churches from the year seven hundred and twenty six, and by prohibiting the use of them in seven hundred and thirty by a solemn edict. This drew upon him the hatred and persecution of the ignorant and superstitious ecclesiastics, and occasioned the loss of all that the empire then possessed in Italy.

Q. How did this happen?

A. *Gregory II.* Pope of Rome, undertook the defence of the images, and in a council of Bishops dependent on him, condemned the edict of the Emperor. By virtue of this seditious condemnation, he caused Rome and the rest of Italy to revolt, having forbade the people thenceforth to acknowledge the Emperor of Rome, or to pay him any tribute.

Q. Did not the Emperor endeavour to bring these insurgents to reason?

A. He attempted it, but in vain. A fleet which he had sent into Italy for this purpose in seven hundred and thirty two, perished by a storm in the Adriatic Gulf; and the fury of the worship of images was so violent in Italy and in the East, that all those were treated as heretics who had religion and courage enough to condemn it.

Q. Did *Leo* the Isaurian possess the empire long?

A. He reigned twenty four years, and died of a drop-sy in the years seven hundred and forty one.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His son *Constantine*, surnamed *Cepronymus*. It must be observed that the last name, which is ignominious, was given him by his enemies the clergy.

Q. On what account were they his enemies?

A. Because, pursuing the measures of his father, he continued to proscribe the worship of images.

Q. Was his reign in other respects prosperous?

A. The superstitious ecclesiastics stirred up numerous troubles and discontents to disturb it. *Constantine*, it must nevertheless be acknowledged, was a worthy Empe-

ror, beloved by the wiser part of the nation, and zealous for the purity of religion.

Q. What proofs did he give of this ?

A. In the year seven hundred and forty four he assembled at Constantinople a council of three hundred and thirty eight Bishops, in which the worship of images was declared contrary to the word of God, and absolutely forbidden throughout the empire.

Q. Was the use of images in the church effectually abolished ?

A. It would have ceased had it not been for the obstinacy of the infatuated monks, who, supported by certain Bishops and the ignorant populace, in secret continued it, and thus kept up one of the first sources of corruption in the church.

Q. Did the Emperor *Constantine* reign long ?

A. He reigned thirty four years, and died, Anno Domini seven hundred and seventy five, in the fifty ninth year of his age.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. His son, named *Leo*, at the age of twenty six. He continued to forbid the worship of images, and died, Anno Domini, seven hundred and eighty, after a reign of five years.

Q. In what state was the kingdom of France ?

A. It must be observed, that in the throne of France three distinct families succeeded each other. The *Merovingian*, the *Carlovingian*, and the *Capetian*.

Q. Whence did they derive their names ?

A. The Merovingian race from *Meroue*, whose posterity reigned till *Pepin the Short*, the father of *Charlemagne*. The Carlovingian from *Charlemagne*, whose descendants were Kings or Emperors till *Hugh Capet*, who began to reign, Anno Domini nine hundred and eighty seven, and from whom originated the Capetian line, which continued till *Louis the Sixteenth*.

Q. Can you enumerate the Kings of the first race ?

A. *Clovis*, who has been already mentioned, as also his four predecessors, was succeeded by *Childebert*, *Clotaire I.* *Charibert*, *Chilperic I.* *Clotaire II.* *Dagobert I.* *Clovis II.* *Clotaire III.* *Theodoric I.* *Clovis III.* *Childe-*

bert II. Dagobert II Chilperic II. Theodoric II. and Chil-eric III in whom ended the first race, Anno Domini seven hundred and fifty two.

Q. By what means was the reign of the first race terminated?

A. The last Kings of the Merovingian race abandoned themselves to indolence and effeminacy, and committed the sole government of the kingdom to officers, whom they called *Mayors of the Palace*. These Lords exercised all the functions of royalty, the title alone was wanting : at length *Pepin the Short*, who was Mayor of the Palace under *Chileric II.* confined that monarch to a monastery, and assumed the sceptre with the consent of the whole nation.

Q. How did *Pepin* support this dignity?

A. He prosecuted a successful war in Italy, where he subdued the Lombards, and took the territory of *Ravenna*, which he presented to the Bishop of Rome. After several other gallant actions, he died at Paris, Anno Domini seven hundred and sixty eight.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. His son *Charlemagne*, one of the greatest princes that ever reigned the Western empire. It was he who transferred the title of Emperor to the Kings of France, from whom it has passed to Germany, as will be seen in its place. *Charlemagne* began his reign, Anno Domini seven hundred and sixty eight, and died Anno Domini eight hundred and fourteen.

Q. What were the first exploits of this prince?

A. *Dedier*, King of the Lombards, giving some disturbance to *Adrian*, Bishop of Rome, *Charlemagne* entered Italy with an army, defeated *Dedier*, and having besieged him in *Pavia*, seized his person and carried him prisoner to France, Anno Domini seven hundred and seventy four. Thus ended the reign of the Lombards in Italy.

Q. Had *Charlemagne* no other wars to support?

A. He subdued the Saxons, and obliged *Witkind*, their prince, to embrace the Christian religion, Anno Domini seven hundred eighty five.

Q. Did he not treat the Frisi in the same manner?

A. Yes; having entirely subdued them in seven hundred and ninety four, he stipulated that they should embrace Christianity, in which case he permitted them to preserve the title of a free people, and exempted them from paying any tribute. From that time the Gospel was generally received among them.

Q. Did this procure the Frisi a lasting peace?

A. At the end of some years they were exposed to the irruptions of the Normans and Danes, who profited by the debility of the empire when divided among the successors of *Charlemagne*.

Q. In what state were affairs in the Eastern empire?

A. *Leo*, son of *Constantine Copronymus*, dying young, as already observed, his son *Constantine*, who was only ten years of age succeeded him, Anno Domini seven hundred and eighty, and, on account of his youth, remained under the tutelage of his mother, the Empress *Irene*.

Q. Did any thing memorable happen in this reign?

A. *Irene*, who was a very wicked princess, and extremely superstitious, in the year seven hundred and eighty seven, assembled at Nice a council of two hundred and eighty very ignorant Bishops. In this the worship of images was established, the council of Constantinople, held under *Constantine Copronymus*, condemned, and those who refused adoration to the images, declared heretics, and anathematized.

Q. Was this council universally received?

A. No; in the year seven hundred and ninety four the Emperor *Charlemagne* assembled another at Frankfort, where the council held by *Irene*, and the worship of images, were condemned.

Q. How did *Irene* proceed after this?

A. Attempting to usurp too great an authority over her son *Constantine*, the young prince obliged her to renounce the empire in the year seven hundred and ninety; but in seven hundred and ninety seven *Irene* having brought over a great party to her interest, made herself mistress of his person, and caused his eyes to be put out with such cruelty, that he died five days after. The end of this wicked woman will be seen in the beginning of the next century.

T H I R D P E R I O D.

FROM THE CORONATION OF CHARLEMAGNE TO THE
REIGN OF HENRY THE FOWLER.—120 YEARS.

N I N T H C E N T U R Y.

Q. By what means did *Charlemagne* attain to the imperial dignity?

A. *Leo III.* Bishop of Rome, being disturbed by the Romans, solicited the aid of *Charles*, then King of France, who reestablished him in his dignity. *Leo*, in return for this service, crowned *Charlemagne* Emperor of the West, on Christmas Eve, Anno Domini eight hundred.

Q. What became of the Empress *Irene* after the death of her son *Constantine*?

A. Her crime having rendered her universally odious, a Lord, named *Nicephorus*, despoiled her of the empire, banished her to the Isle of Lesbos, and seized the reins of government himself, Anno Domini eight hundred and two, *Irene* died in great misery the same year in the place of her exile.

Q. Did *Charlemagne* long enjoy the empire?

A. He died the twenty eighth of January, eight hundred and fourteen, at the age of seventy one, the forty seventh year of his reign, and the fourteenth of his empire.

Q. Where did he die?

A. At Aix la Chapelle.

Q. To whom did he leave the empire?

A. To his son *Lewis I.* surnamed *Dobonnaire*, whom he had before his death made a partner in the government.

Q. Was the reign of *Lewis le Dobonnaire* fortunate?

A. No; it was disturbed by the rebellion of his children, *Lothaire*, *Lewis*, and *Pepin*, who proceeded to the last extremities.

Q. What pretence did they make for their iniquitous conduct?

A. These three princes were the children of *Lewis* by his first wife, the princess *Ermengarda*: when this lady died, he married *Judith*, a beautiful young woman, by whom he had a son, named *Charles*, who was afterwards Emperor. *Lothaire*, *Lewis*, and *Pepin*, who said that the empire was destined to their half brother, made war upon their father, and accused their step mother of incontinence. This revolt created many troubles in the reign of *Lewis le Debonnaire*, and rendered that prince very unhappy.

Q. Did he reign long?

A. He died in the year eight hundred and forty, the twenty seventh year of his reign, and the sixty fourth of his age.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Lothaire*, his eldest son, who having deprived his two brothers of their portion, drew upon himself a sanguinary war.

Q. Recount the particulars?

A. *Pepin* dying in the year eight hundred and thirty seven, there remained only *Lewis* and *Charles*, who uniting their forces, gave battle to *Lothaire*, and defeated him, Anno Domini eight hundred and forty one.

Q. What were the consequences of this action?

A. *Lothaire*, being again defeated by his brothers, was obliged, in the year eight hundred and forty four, to consent to a division. *Lothaire*, with the title of Emperor, preserved Rome, Italy, Belgic Gaul, Provence, and Burgundy. *Lewis* had Germany, and *Charles*, France.

Q. Did *Lothaire* preserve the empire long?

A. He abdicated it, Anno Domini eight hundred and fifty five, and retired into a monastery, after having divided the empire between his three sons, *Lothaire*, *Lewis*, and *Charles*. He left the empire of all Italy to his eldest son *Lewis*; Lorraine fell to *Lothaire*; and *Charles* had for his portion Provence.

Q. What was the result of this division?

A. *Charles* died the first year without issue; *Lothaire* survived till towards the year eight hundred and sixty nine; and the Emperor *Lewis II.* having reunited all

these states, ended his days, Anno Domini eight hundred and seventy five.

Q. Recount now what was passing in the Eastern empire?

A. *Nicephorus*, who has been already mentioned, perished in an engagement with the Bulgarians, Anno Domini eight hundred and eleven, the ninth year of his reign.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Michael Curopolatus*, a prince little formed to govern. Being vanquished by the Bulgarians, Anno Domini eight hundred and thirteen, he willingly ceded the empire to *Leo* the Armenian.

Q. What was the character of this prince?

A. He was valiant and pious, and during the whole of his reign laboured to explode the worship of images, which *Irene* had established in her corrupt council at Nice.

Q. How did he end his days?

A. On Christmas day, in the year eight hundred and twenty, he was murdered while at church by *Michael the Stammerer*, who assumed the imperial dignity.

Q. What is said of this Emperor?

A. He is accused, and there is reason to believe deservedly, of great cruelty; he was not, however, more favourable to the worship of images than his predecessor. He died, Anno Domini eight hundred and twenty nine, in the ninth year of his reign.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His son *Theophilus*, a prince of a well regulated life, a strict observer of the laws of justice, and an enemy to the worship of images.

Q. How many years did he reign?

A. Twelve, and three months, and died, Anno Domini eight hundred and forty one, a year after *Lewis le Debonnaire*.

Q. Have you nothing to say of Pope *Joan*, who is reported to have lived in this century?

A. Those who mention her say that she filled the papal chair from the year eight hundred and fifty five to eight hundred and fifty seven, and place her between Popes *Leo IV.* and *Benedict III.* but it must be confessed

the story cannot be supported by any satisfactory authority, and must be considered as an ill imagined fiction.

Q. What Emperor succeeded *Lewis II.*?

A. *Charles*, surnamed the *Bald*, the son of *Lewis le Debonnaire* by the Empress *Judith*. He began to reign Anno Domini eight hundred and seventy five, and died Anno Domini eight hundred and seventy seven. The Normans, a barbarous nation, ravaged several provinces of France during the reign of this Emperor.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. There are authors who reckon his son *Lewis the Stammerer* among the Emperors, but he was merely King of France. He died in eight hundred and seventy nine, and was succeeded in the kingdom of France by his two sons, *Lewis* and *Carloman*. *Lewis* died Anno Domini eight hundred and eighty two, and *Carloman*, Anno Domini eight hundred and eighty four. A third son, whom he left an infant, was afterwards King of France, and is known by the name of *Charles the Simple*.

Q. Was there no other prince in the West who bore the title of Emperor?

A. *Charles the Fat* was invested with that dignity. He was the son of *Lewis the German*, the second son of *Lewis le Debonnaire*. He took the title of Emperor from the year eight hundred and eighty, and attained the kingdom Anno Domini eight hundred eighty five.

Q. Did he long enjoy these honors?

A. He was forced to abdicate them in eight hundred and eighty seven, on account of his bad health and weak abilities. After this he fell into such poverty, that for a subsistence he was obliged to the liberality of *Arnold*, the son of *Carloman*, King of Bavaria. He died Anno Domini eight hundred and eighty eight.

Q. Who was *Carloman*?

A. He was the son of *Lewis*, King of Germany, elder brother of *Charles the Fat*.

Q. Who succeeded *Charles the Fat*?

A. His nephew *Arnold*, of Bavaria, who has been just mentioned. He reigned only three years, dying of a loathsome disease, Anno Domini eight hundred and ninety nine. He began to reign in eight hundred and ninety

fix. From eight hundred and eighty eight to eight hundred and ninety six there had been in Italy several princes who took the title of Emperor; but none of them had been able to support it.

Q. Who reigned at this time in France?

A. *Eudes*, Count of Paris, reigned from the year eight hundred and eighty nine to eight hundred and ninety eight. By his death he left the kingdom to *Charles the Simple*, son of *Lewis the Stammerer*.

Q. Recount what happened in the East during the remainder of the ninth century?

A. *Theophilus*, who has been before mentioned, dying, his son *Michael* succeeded him, under the tutelage of his mother *Theodora*, who taking advantage of the minority of the Emperor, followed the example of *Irene*, and reestablished the worship of images, which was afterwards maintained, and is still supported in the East.

Q. Was the reign of this Emperor happy?

A. No; he gave himself up to impiety and debauchery, and was killed by one of his officers, called *Basil the Macedonian*, Anno Domini eight hundred and sixty seven; a crime which was the more atrocious, as *Michael* had the year before made him a partner in the empire.

Q. What was the conduct of *Basil the Macedonian* in other respects?

A. Historians speak advantageously both of his valour and love of justice.

Q. Did he reign long?

A. More than twenty years: he died Anno Domini eight hundred and eighty nine.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His son *Leo*, surnamed *the Philosopher*, a prince of great merit.

TENTH CENTURY.

Q. Who succeeded the Emperor *Arnold*?

A. *Louis IV.* his son; but he bore neither the title nor the diadem of Emperor. He reigned from the year

nine hundred to nine hundred and eleven, which was that of his death. The race of *Charlemagne* in Germany ended with him.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. The Emperor *Conrad*, Duke of Franconia, who reigned only seven years, and died Anno Domini nine hundred and nineteen.

FOURTH PERIOD.

FROM THE REIGN OF HENRY THE FOWLER TO THE
ELECTION OF RODOLPHUS, COUNT OF HAPSBURGH.
363 YEARS.

Q. What Emperor succeeded *Conrad*?

A. *Henry*, surnamed the *Fowler*, on account of his love of falconry. This prince was the son of *Otto*, Duke of Saxony, descended, as it is conjectured, from *Witekind*. He began his reign in the year nine hundred and twenty.

Q. Did he effect any thing remarkable?

A. He vanquished the Huns, or Hungarians, who had committed great disorders in the empire, and granted them a peace, after restraining them to the limits of the country they now occupy. This war lasted till the year nine hundred and thirty four, and was renewed at different times. The Hungarians were at this time pagans.

Q. What other actions did *Henry the Fowler* perform?

A. About the year nine hundred and twenty six or nine hundred and twenty seven, he made war on the *Venedi*, a people of Sclavonia who inhabited that part of Saxony, afterwards called the Magraviate and Electorate of Brandenburg.

Q. Did he entirely subdue them?

A. He began the conquest by taking the city of Brandenburg, which was called in the Sclavonic tongue *Brannybor*, or the *Defence of the Forest*.

Q. Was the Margraviate of Brandenburg, as it is said, founded at that time?

A. It is very doubtful. The Margraves that are mentioned in this century are fictitious and uncertain. The true origin of the Margraviate relates to the twelfth century.

Q. In what year did *Henry the Fowler* die?

A. In nine hundred and thirty six, having, during his life, acquired the esteem and respect of all the nations in Europe.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His son *Otto the Great*, a virtuous and magnanimous prince. During his reign he extended the Christian religion throughout the empire, and founded the Bishopricks of Brandenburg, Havelburg, Meisen, Zeitz, and Magdeburg. He subdued, in various engagements, the French, the Hungarians, and the Bohemians, and performed several other gallant actions. He died, Anno Domini nine hundred and seventy three, after a reign of thirty seven years, and was interred at Magdeburg.

Q. In what state was the Christian religion at this time?

A. Both the doctrine and manners of its professors were so corrupt, that on account of the prevailing ignorance and depravity, historians have given the tenth the appellation of the *Iron century*.

Q. But did not some nations embrace Christianity at this time?

A. Yes; the Russians, till then pagans, were, about the year nine hundred and twenty four, converted to Christianity by the Greeks of Constantinople. *Olga*, their Duchess, and *Wolodomir*, her son, were baptized. *Micislais*, King or Prince of Poland, was also converted in the year nine hundred and sixty five; and *Stephen*, the first Christian King of Hungary, was baptized in nine hundred and sixty nine.

Q. Give me now some account of the Eastern empire?

A. *Leo*, the philosopher, died in the year nine hundred and eleven, and left the empire to *Constantine Porphyrogenitus*, his son, who was then an infant. This

prince was learned, but was unfortunately too much influenced by the several tutors under whom he had been placed. He died, Anno Domini nine hundred and fifty nine, at the age of fifty four, and is thought to have been poisoned by *Romanus*, his son and successor.

Q. Did *Romanus* reign long ?

A. He reigned from the year nine hundred and fifty nine to nine hundred and sixty three, when he died at the age of twenty four. He was a prince of very depraved morals.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Nicephorus Phocas*, a valiant prince, who retook several cities ; among others Antioch, which had been seized by the Saracens. He died, Anno Domini nine hundred and sixty nine, by the perfidy of his wife, the Empress *Theophano*, and one of his officers, named *John Zimisces*, who succeeded him. He reigned but six years, being poisoned, Anno Domini nine hundred and seventy five, by one of his Chamberlains, named *Basil*.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Basil* and *Constantine*, who reigned jointly. They were the sons of *Romanus*, and had been made colleagues in the empire by *John Zimisces*. They both died in the eleventh century.

Q. Give some account of the Kings of France ?

A. *Charles the Simple* reigned at the beginning of this century. He was obliged to cede to the Normans that province of France which still bears their name. *Rollo*, Duke of Normandy, embraced Christianity, and married *Giselda*, the daughter of *Charles the Simple*, Anno Domini nine hundred and twelve. This King, after many vexations, died, Anno Domini nine hundred and twenty nine, having reigned twenty five years. The last six years of his life is not reckoned, as he was deposed in the year nine hundred and twenty three by *Rodolphus*, Duke of Burgundy, who usurped the crown.

Q. Did *Rodolphus* reign long ?

A. He reigned till the year nine hundred and thirty six, and was succeeded by *Lewis*, surnamed *Transmarine*.

Q. How did he acquire this surname ?

A. From taking refuge in England, after his father was deposed and made prisoner. On the death of *Rodolbus* he was recalled. He died, Anno Domini nine hundred and fifty four, and was succeeded by *Lothaire*, his son, who died, Anno Domini nine hundred and eighty six, leaving the kingdom to his son *Lewis*, who died without issue in nine hundred and eighty seven. With him ended the race of *Charlemagne* in France.

Q. To whom was the crown of France transferred?

A. To *Hugh Capet*, who, with the universal consent of the nobility, began to reign, Anno Domini nine hundred and eighty seven, and dying Anno Domini nine hundred and ninety seven, left the kingdom to his son *Robert*.

Q. Conclude this century with some account of the Emperors of Germany. Who succeeded *Otto the Great*?

A. His son *Otto II.* This prince having entered Italy to defend Calabria and Apulia against the Greeks, who, aided by the Saracens, attempted to take possession of it, after defeating them, died at Rome universally regretted towards the end of the year nine hundred and eighty three.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Otto III.* his son, who began to reign Anno Domini nine hundred and eighty four, and died at the beginning of the eleventh century.

Q. What was the state of the Netherlands in this century?

A. The Counts of Holland and Zealand shared the principal authority.

Q. How many families of these Counts were there?

A. Five, anciently called the House of *Holland*, that of *Hainault*, that of *Bavaria*, that of *Burgundy*, and that of *Austria*.

Q. How many Counts descended from the ancient House of Holland?

A. Seventeen: *Thierry I.* *Thierry II.* *Arnold.* *Thierry III.* *Thierry IV.* *Florent I.* *Thierry V.* *Florent II.* *Thierry VI.* *Florent III.* *Thierry VII.* *Ada.* *William I.* *Florent IV.* *William II.* *Florent V.* and *John I.* They

were almost all engaged in war with the Bishops of Utrecht, and the Frisi.

ELEVENTH CENTURY.

Q. Is any thing memorable recorded of *Otho III.* ?

A. When he began to reign in nine hundred and eighty four, he was still a minor. He died in the year one thousand and two, poisoned, it is conjectured, by his second wife; whose husband he had put to death in order to marry her.

Q. What was the name of his first wife ?

A. *Mary*; she was daughter to the King of Arragon, and was, by the Emperor's order, burned alive at Modena for an atrocious crime, of which she was convicted. *Otho* had no children by his first or second marriage.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Henry of Bavaria*, surnamed the *Lame*. The church of Rome has ranked him, as well as his Empress *Cunegunda*, among the number of her saints. He died, Anno Domini one thousand and twenty four, and was interred at Bamberg, where his tomb is still shown, as also that of *Cunegunda*.

Q. To whom did the empire fall after the death of *Henry II.* ?

A. To *Conrad*, surnamed the *Salic*. In his time *Robert*, son of *Hugh Capet*, reigned in France; *Ferdinand I.* in Spain; and *Stephen*, who has been already mentioned, in Hungary. The latter died towards the year one thousand and thirty eight.

Q. How long did the Emperor *Conrad* reign ?

A. He reigned fifteen years. In one thousand and thirty nine his son *Henry III.* ascended the throne, and dying in one thousand and fifty six, was succeeded by *Henry IV.* his son.

Q. In what state was the church ?

A. The Bishops of Rome, availing themselves of the negligence of the Emperors, and of the people's igno-

rance, began to erect themselves into primates and sovereigns of all Christendom. Having ruled despotic in the spiritual, they now presumed to extend their authority over the temporal affairs of Emperors and Kings.

Q. What Popes then occupied the see of Rome?

A. *Gregory VII.* is the most famous. He was elected Pope Anno Domini one thousand and seventy three, and before his election bore the name of *Hildebrand*. He was a man of obscure birth, violent in his temper, and so strongly attached to his chimerical pretensions, that he stopped at nothing to support them,

Q. What were his first decrees?

A. In the year one thousand and seventy four he prohibited the marriage of priests; and although at first he found difficulties in establishing this decree, in the end he prevailed, and his successor finished what he had begun.

Q. How was the Emperor *Henry IV.* employed during this time?

A. Aware of the irritable and ambitious temper of the Pope, he enteted into an accommodation with him, but could not afterwards avoid coming to an open rupture.

Q. How so?

A. The Emperors had hitherto enjoyed the right of *investiture*, that is, of putting the ecclesiastics in possession of their dignities. Of this right *Gregory*, who resolved to be master in all things, attempted to deprive the Emperor; and not finding him so docile as he wished, excommunicated him, declared he had forfeited the empire, and that his subjects were absolved from their oath of fidelity.

Q. What were the consequences of this?

A. The Pope, having suborned several persons in Germany, caused them to elect for Emperor *Rodolphus*, Duke of Suabia, who took up arms against his sovereign. He even gained some advantages over him, but was at length defeated in a battle, where he lost his hand, and died soon after.

Q. Did he express any contrition for his crime?

A. Yes; a short time before his death, at Marfebourg.

to which he had retired after his defeat, he turned towards the Bishops who had suborned him, and pointing to the hand that was severed from his body, "There," said he, "is the hand with which I swore fidelity to the Emperor, my sovereign—consider it, and see whither your evil counsels have conducted me."

Q. Did this produce any good effect on the Pope?

A. On the contrary, it incensed him still more against the Emperor, whom he again excommunicated, exhorting all his subjects to revolt from him.

Q. What course did *Henry* take?

A. He made war upon the Pope, and after having besieged him in the castle of St. Angelo, obliged him to retire to Salerno, where he died of chagrin. The end of the history of the reign of *Henry IV.* will be seen in the twelfth century.

Q. Who reigned in the East?

A. The two brothers, *Basil* and *Constantine*. *Basil* rendered himself master of Bulgaria, and after that expedition turned monk. He died Anno Domini, one thousand and twenty five, and his brother *Constantine*, a prince of little merit, died Anno Domini one thousand and twenty eight.

Q. Who was their successor?

A. *Romanus Agyrus*, who had married *Zoë*, the daughter of *Constantine*. This wicked princess caused her husband to be assassinated, Anno Domini one thousand and thirty four, by *Michael*, the Paphlagonian, whom she raised to the empire, and afterwards married.

Q. Did he enjoy the empire long?

A. Only seven years, during which his conscience was continually harassed by remorse. At length, to compose his mind, he retired to a monastery, that he might at leisure lament his crime. He died, a short time after, Anno Domini one thousand and forty one.

Q. What became of the Empress *Zoë*?

A. She married *Constantine Monomarchus*, under whom the empire sustained great losses, and was considerably weakened in all parts. The Normans possessed themselves of Apulia, and the Turks became formidable in the

East This Emperor died Anno Domini one thousand and fifty four.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Michael Stratioticus*, who had married *Theodora*, the sister of *Zoë*. The grandes of Constantinople having adjudged him unworthy of the empire, in his place elected *Isaac Comnenus*, Anno Domini one thousand and fifty seven. He reigned only two years ; at the end of which he withdrew to a monastery, having nominated *Constantine Ducas* his successor, Anno Domini one thousand and fifty nine.

Q. What was the character of this Emperor ?

A. He was just, and meant well, but possessed very moderate abilities. Under his reign the empire continued to grow weaker by the conquests of the Turks and Saracens. He died, Anno Domini one thousand and sixty seven, and left three sons, *Michael*, *Andronicus*, and *Constantine*, surnamed *Porphyrogenetus*.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Diogenes*, who married his widow *Eudoxia*. He was a valiant prince, but had the misfortune in an engagement to be taken prisoner by the Turks.

Q. What were the consequences of this accident ?

A. The Greeks confined *Eudoxia* to a monastery, and elected *Michael*, the son of *Constantine Ducas*, Emperor. *Diogenes* having been released from prison returned to Constantinople ; but *Michael* caused his eyes to be put out, and banished him to one of the Islands, where a short time after he died. This happened Anno Domini one thousand and seventy one.

Q. What was the fate of *Michael* ?

A. *Michael*, surnamed *Parapinacius*, was a prince of no abilities. The Turks every day making a progress, he was unable to oppose, he was banished to a monastery, and *Nicephorus Botaniatus* elected in his stead. Anno Domini one thousand and seventy eight. He reigned till one thousand and eighty one, when he also was confined in a monastery.

Q. Who occupied his place ?

A. *Alexis Comnenus*, a prince of abilities, who a little revived the drooping state of the Eastern empire. The

life of this Emperor has been written in Greek with great elegance by his daughter *Ann*, a princess of great merit. We shall speak of *Alexis Comnenus* again in the succeeding century.

Q. Who reigned at this time in France?

A. *Robert*, son of *Hugh Capet*, who died Anno Domini one thousand and thirty three. He was succeeded by *Henry I.* his son, who died Anno Domini one thousand and sixty. To him succeeded *Philip I.* who lived till the twelfth century.

Q. Did no great revolutions occur in the eleventh century?

A. Yes, two; the conquest of England by *William*, Duke of Normandy, and the taking of Jerusalem by the crusaders, headed by *Godfrey de Bouillon*.

Q. In what year did the conquest of England take place?

A. In the year one thousand and sixty six. The Anglo Saxon Kings had enjoyed the peaceable possession of the Island till the arrival of the Danes, to whose superior prowess they were forced to yield; but upon the death of their last king *Hardicanute*, the Saxon line was again restored in *Edward*, surnamed the *Confessor*, the last legitimate King of the Saxons. *Edward* upon his death nominated *William*, Duke of Normandy, his successor, who landed at the head of a large army of French and Normans to take possession of his inheritance. At the battle of *Hastings* he defeated and slew *Harold*, who had ascended the throne, and thus assured the crown to himself and his posterity.

Q. Give me now an account of the conquest of Jerusalem?

A. From the seventh century, that city had been subject to the Mahometans. Pope *Urban II.* having caused a crusade against them to be preached in all the kingdoms of Christendom, several powerful nobles took the cross, and having raised an army of two hundred and sixty thousand men in France, Germany, and other countries, in the year one thousand and ninety six went into Palestine, where they did not arrive till the year one thousand and ninety nine. The Christians took Jerusalem that

year, and having erected it into a kingdom, proclaimed *Godfrey de Bouillon* first King of Jerusalem and Palestine.

Q. Was Godfrey crowned ?

A. He refused that honor. "God forbid," said he, as they approached to put the diadem on his head, "that I should appear crowned with gold in a place where Jesus Christ, my master, wore a crown of thorns."

TWELFTH CENTURY.

Q. How did the reign of the Emperor *Henry IV.* conclude ?

A. Pope *Pascal II.* in the year one thousand one hundred and two, again excommunicated him, and instigated his son, who was afterwards *Henry V.* to declare war against his father, whom he vanquished and despoiled of the empire in the year one thousand one hundred and six.

Q. What afterwards became of *Henry IV.* ?

A. He died in prison at Liege the fifty fourth year of his empire, and was succeeded by his son *Henry V.* Anno Domini one thousand one hundred and eight.

Q. What was the fate of this Emperor ?

A. He was greatly disquieted by the Popes, and was even excommunicated by *Pascal II.* At length, having accommodated matters with the see of Rome, he died without issue at Utrecht, in the year one thousand one hundred and twenty five, after a reign of nineteen years.

Q. What remarkable event happened in the empire during the reign of *Henry V.* ?

A. *Otho*, Bishop of Bamberg, converted the Pomeranians, who had been till then Pagans, to Christianity.

Q. Did the Christians continue in possession of the kingdom of Jerusalem ?

A. Yes ; they retained possession of it eighty eight

years, at the end of which it was retaken by *Saladin*. *Godfrey de Bouillon* died, Anno Domini one thousand one hundred, and was succeeded by his brother *Baldwin*.

Q. Who reigned at this time in France?

A. *Philip I.* dying, *Lewis VI.* surnamed *Le Gros*, succeeded him in the year one thousand one hundred and eight; and by his decease in one thousand one hundred and thirty seven, left the crown to *Lewis VII.* surnamed the *Young*.

Q. Who succeeded the Emperor, *Henry V.*?

A. *Lothaire II.* Duke of Saxony, a religious and just prince, who reigned from the year one thousand one hundred and twenty four to one thousand one hundred and thirty seven.

Q. To whom did the empire afterwards fall?

A. To *Conrad III.* Duke of Suabia, the son of a sister of *Henry V.* He began to reign Anno Domini one thousand one hundred and thirty nine, and died at Bamberg in one thousand one hundred and fifty two, in the fourteenth year of his reign.

Q. In what state was the Margraviate of Brandenburg?

A. In the year one thousand one hundred and forty two, it fell under the power of *Albert the Bear*, prince of Anhalt, who may be considered as the first Margrave of the Margraviate, which he transmitted to his posterity, who retained possession of it till late in the fourteenth century.

Q. Give me now some account of the Kings of England?

A. *William the Conqueror* was succeeded by his son *William II.* surnamed *Rufus*, who dying without issue, was succeeded by his brother *Henry I.* whose only surviving child, *Matilda*, took for her second husband *Geoffrey Plantagenet*, Duke of Anjou. The fruit of this marriage was *Henry II.* who, after the usurpation of *Stephen*, which continued eighteen years, ascended the throne of England one thousand one hundred and four. He married *Eleonora*, Duchess of Guyenne, who had been divorced from her first husband, *Lewis the Young*, King of France.

Q. Who succeeded the Emperor *Conrad*?

A. *Frederic Barbarossa*, his nephew, one of the greatest princes that ever reigned in Germany. He, as well as his predecessors, was disturbed by the Popes, with whom, after a long war, he was forced to enter into an irksome treaty, Anno Domini one thousand one hundred and seventy seven. One of the conditions of this treaty was, that he should engage in the crusade.

Q. And did he carry the war into Palestine?

A. Yes; but on his arrival, in the year one thousand one hundred and eighty seven, he learnt that Jerusalem had been retaken by the famous *Saladin*, Sultan of Egypt. This, however, did not prevent his performing many gallant actions in that country, where he continued till the year one thousand one hundred and ninety, which was that of his death.

Q. How did he die?

A. Being in Silicia during the intense heats of summer, he imprudently bathed in the river Cydnus, which flows near the city of Tarsus, and the coldness of the water took such an effect on him, that he was seized with a fever, of which he expired in the thirty eighth year of his reign.

Q. Name the Christian Kings who reigned in Jerusalem from the year one thousand and ninety nine to one thousand one hundred and eighty seven?

A. Godfrey de Bouillon, Baldwin I. Baldwin II. Baldwin III. Almeric Baldwin IV. Baldwin V. and Guy de Lusignan, during whose reign the city was taken by *Saladin*, since which it has remained subject to the Mahometans.

Q. Who succeeded the Emperor *Barbarossa*?

A. His son *Henry VI.* in the year one thousand one hundred and ninety one.

Q. What is said of this Emperor?

A. Authors speak of him differently; but it is generally agreed that he was naturally cruel and inhuman. He died at Messina in the year one thousand one hundred and ninety nine, and left by his wife *Constance*, Queen of Sicily, a son, who in the end attained the empire,

though he was not his immediate successor, as will appear in the succeeding century.

Q. Who succeeded *Henry II.* King of England?

A. *Richard*, surnamed *Cœur de Lion*. This prince, returning from Palestine, was seized by *Leopold*, Duke of Austria, who detained him in captivity till one thousand one hundred and ninety four, when an immense sum was paid for his ransom. His brother and successor *John*, surnamed *Lackland*, we will mention in the succeeding century.

Q. Who reigned in France?

A. *Lewis the Young*, who died at Paris in the year one thousand one hundred and eighty, in the forty fourth year of his reign. He was succeeded by his son *Philip*, surnamed *Augustus*, who died in the twelfth century.

Q. Did no great event take place in this century?

A. Yes; the foundation of the empire of the Tartars by *Genghiskan*.

Q. It now only remains to speak of the Emperors of the East. Did *Alexis Comnenus* live late in this century?

A. He died in the year one thousand one hundred and eighteen, and was succeeded by his son *John Comnenus*, surnamed *Culo Jean*, a very valiant prince. He died, Anno Domini one thousand one hundred and forty three, in the twenty fifth year of his reign, in consequence of a wound he received in hunting. He was succeeded by his son *Manuel Comnenus*, an unfortunate and contemptible prince, who, towards the end of his reign, entertained the design of embracing and establishing the Mahometan religion in his dominions.

Q. What was the end of this Emperor?

A. He died a natural death in the year one thousand one hundred and eighty, and was succeeded by his son *Alexis*. This prince, who was only twelve years of age, was married to *Agnes*, daughter of *Lewis the Young*, who was only eight.

Q. Was the reign of this prince happy?

A. No; it continued but three years. *Andronicus Comnenus*, first cousin to his father *Manuel*, seized upon the empire, and cruelly put *Alexis* to death, at the age of

fifteen ; besides which, he caused all the French, who had come to Constantinople in the suite of *Agnes*, the young Empress, to be massacred. This happened in the year one thousand one hundred and eighty three.

Q. Did *Andronicus* long enjoy the fruit of his crime ?

A. At the end of two years a general insurrection of the people took place, and he was torn in pieces by the enraged multitude.

Q. Who reigned after him ?

A. *Alexis Angelus*, who possessed the empire only nine years, being, in one thousand one hundred and ninety five, dethroned by his own brother, *Alexis Angelus*, who caused his eyes to be put out.

Q. What happened afterwards ?

A. *Alexis Angelus* seized the imperial dignity, but troubles soon after followed, which occasioned the ruin of the empire of Constantinople, as will be seen in the succeeding century.

THIRTEENTH CENTURY.

Q. In what state was the empire of Germany at the beginning of this century ?

A. Upon the death of *Henry VI.* the candidates for the empire were *Philip*, the son of *Frederick Barbarossa*, and brother of *Henry VI.* and *Otto*, Duke of Saxony.

Q. Which was preferred ?

A. *Philip*, who had the strongest claim, made war upon *Otto* ; but an agreement was at length made, that after the death of *Philip*, the empire should devolve to *Otto*, who, till that period, should neither assume the title, nor exercise the functions of Emperor.

Q. Did *Philip* live long after this ?

A. He was killed, Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and eight, at Bamberg, through the treachery of one *Otto de Wülfbach* ; upon which *Otto*, Duke of Saxony, took possession of the empire.

Q. Did any important event take place in the reign of *Otto* ?

A. In the year one thousand two hundred and fifteen Pope *Innocent III.* held at Rome a council, in which, by order of that Pontiff, Transubstantiation was ranked among the articles of the church of Rome's faith. This was called the Council of Lateran.

Q. Was this the only wound the church received?

A. It received another very pernicious in the establishment of two orders of mendicant friars, which filled the world with errors and superstitions. These were the *Cordeliers* and *Dominicans*; the first founded by *Francis D'Assise*, and the second by *Dominic*, a Spanish Prebendary.

Q. Was the reign of *Otho IV.* prosperous?

A. By no means. Having declared war against the French, he was defeated at Bovincis by *Philip Augustus*, King of France, Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and fourteen, and died of grief, universally abandoned, Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and sixteen.

Q. In what state were affairs at Constantinople?

A. *Alexis Angelus* having usurped the empire, one of his nephews, named also *Alexis*, took refuge with the Emperor *Philip*, who had married one of his sisters, the daughter of *Isaac Comnenus*.

Q. What was the consequence of this?

A. *Philip*, not being in a condition to assist him, recommended him to the Venetians and French, who had at this time undertaken a crusade to the Holy Land.

Q. Did these crusaders effect any thing in favour of *Alexis*?

A. Having passed the sea, they took Constantinople in the year one thousand two hundred and three, and having driven out *Alexis Comnenus*, reestablished *Isaac Angelus* and *Alexis* his son upon the throne.

Q. Did they maintain possession of it?

A. No; a quarrel happening between the father and son, one *Alexis Murfuffle*, after having murdered them, seized upon the empire. This attempt recalled the crusaders, who put *Murfuffle* to death, and pillaged Constantinople, where they elected *Baldwin*, Count of Flanders, one of the chiefs of their expedition, Emperor. This

happened Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and four.

Q. What other great events occurred at the beginning of this century ?

A. The inroad of the Tartars, subjects of *Genghiskan*, in Europe, where after having subdued almost all Asia, they in a short time conquered Russia, Hungary, Silesia, and divers other countries. Nothing ever equalled the rapidity of their conquests, which were only put an end to in Europe by the death of *Genghiskan*. This happened Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and twenty six.

Q. Who reigned in France at this time ?

A. *Philip Augustus*, who died in the year one thousand two hundred and eighteen. He was succeeded by his son *Lewis VIII.* who died Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and twenty six. *Lewis IX.* otherwise called *St. Lewis*, ascended the throne of his father the same year, at the early age of twelve.

Q. Who succeeded the Emperor *Otho IV.* ?

A. *Frederick II.* the son of *Henry VI.* and *Constance*, Queen of Sicily. He was a prince of singular merit, though his reign was by no means prosperous. It was in his time that Italy was divided into two factions, that of the *Guelfes* and *Gibelens* : the former espoused the cause of the Popes, and the latter that of the Emperors.

Q. What was the end of *Frederick II.* ?

A. After a life replete with troubles and vexations, he died in Apulia, Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and sixty, at the age of fifty seven, in the thirty third year of his reign.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Conrad IV.* his son, who was poisoned in the year one thousand two hundred and fifty four by *Manfred*, or *Mainfroi*, his natural brother.

Q. Was there no other Emperor after this ?

A. *William II.* Count of Holland, had been elected upon the death of *Frederick II.* but he bore the title only till one thousand two hundred and fifty six, being killed in an engagement with the Frisi.

Q. What became of the empire afterwards ?

A. It was rent by internal divisions, and a sort of interregnum ensued. One party offered the imperial dignity to *Alphonso*, King of Castile, who accepted, but did not come into Germany to take possession of it: the other elected *Richard*, Duke of Cornwall, the brother of *Henry III.* King of England, who came to Aix, where he was crowned; but not having address to preserve the friendship of the princes of the empire, he was held in no consideration. He died Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and seventy one.

Q. What became of the successors of the Emperor *Frederick II*?

A. *Mainfroi*, his natural brother, reigned in Naples and Sicily in the year one thousand two hundred and sixty one; but Pope *Urban IV.* given these kingdoms to *Charles* of Anjou, brother of *Lewis IX.* King of France, that prince passed into Italy, gave battle to *Mainfroi*, whom he vanquished, and became sole possessor of the two kingdoms. *Mainfroi* perished in the action.

Q. Had not *Charles* of Anjou other wars to sustain?

A. *Conradin*, son of *Conrad IV.* came into Italy with an army to contest with *Charles* the possession of his paternal inheritance. He was defeated in an engagement that took place between them, and put to flight, but being intercepted on his way, *Charles*, with savage barbarity, caused his head to be struck off by the public executioner, Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and sixty six.

Q. Who instigated him to this cruel action?

A. Pope *Clement IV.* *Urban's* successor, who understanding that *Conradin* had fallen into the hands of *Charles* of Anjou, wrote to him thus: "The life of *Conradin* is the death of *Charles*, and the death of *Conradin* is the life of *Charles*."

Q. Was *Lewis IX.* King of France, still alive?

A. Yes; he lived till the year one thousand two hundred and seventy, when he died at Tunis, whither he had marched with an army upon a crusade against the Mahometans. He had undertaken a former expedition, in which he was made prisoner, and obliged to purchase his freedom at an immense ransom.

FIFTH PERIOD.

FROM THE ELECTION OF RODOLPHUS, COUNT OF HAPSBURGH, TO THE REIGN OF FREDERICK I. ELECTOR OF BRANDENBURGH.—144 YEARS.

Q. How did the divisions and the interregnum in the empire terminate ?

A. They ended by the election of *Rodolphus*, Count of Hapsburgh, the first Emperor of the house of Austria. He began to reign in the year one thousand two hundred and seventy three, and proved a virtuous prince, of whom historians have universally spoken in commendation.

Q. What were his principal exploits ?

A. He defeated *Ottocare* King of Bohemia, who was slain in the battle, which he gave *Rodolphus* possession of all Austria.

Q. Who reigned in France ?

A. *Philip the Hardy*, who had succeeded his father *Lewis IX.* in one thousand two hundred and seventy. He died at Perpignan in the year one thousand two hundred and eighty five, and was succeeded by his son *Philip the Fair*.

Q. What Kings reigned at this time in England ?

A. *John*, surnamed *Lackland*, who lost Normandy in the year one thousand two hundred and four. He was succeeded by his son *Henry III.* at whose death *Edward I.* ascended the throne.

Q. In what year did the Emperor *Rodolphus* die ?

A. In one thousand two hundred and ninety one, and was succeeded by *Adolphus*, Count of Nassau.

Q. Did *Adolphus* remain in peaceable possession of the empire ?

A. No ; having rendered himself universally detested by his cruelty, *Albert*, Duke of Austria, son of *Rodolphus*, declared war against him, and he perished in an engagement that took place near the city of Worms, Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and ninety eight. *Albert* ascended the throne in his stead.

Q. Did the Tartars still render themselves formidable ?

A. They continued their progress in Asia, where they became very powerful. In the year one thousand two hundred and fifty eight they even conquered the empire of China. *Haulacon Kan*, grandson of *Genghis Kan*, rendered himself master of Bagdad, a city on the Tigris, which the Caliphs made the place of their residence. He put to death *Moustaſim Billah*, the last of this race.

Q. Who reigned at this time in Constantinople ?

... That city having, as already observed, been taken by the crusaders, *Baldwin*, Count of Flanders, reigned there, and bore the title of Emperór of the East ; but the second year of his reign he was vanquished and made prisoner by *John*, King of Bulgaria, who put him to death. His son *Henry* succeeded him in the year one thousand two hundred and six, and reigned ten years. He was succeeded by *Peter* of Auxerre, who had married his sister. His son *Robert* next ascended the throne, and after him *Baldwin*, the brother of *Robert*, under whose reign, in the year one thousand two hundred and sixty one, the Greeks, commanded by *Michael Paleologus*, whom they had elected Emperor, retook Constantinople.

Q. Did *Michael Paleologus*, retain possession of it ?

A. Yes ; he reigned till the year one thousand two hundred and eighty two, and was succeeded by his son *Andronicus Paleologus*, who died in the fourteenth century.

Q. In what state were the affairs of *Charles of Anjou*, King of Naples and of Sicily ?

A. He kept possession of the kingdom of Naples ; but Sicily was seized by *Peter*, King of Arragon, who had married *Constance*, the daughter of *Mainfroi*, natural son of *Frederick II*,

Q. How did this happen ?

A. The King of Arragon gained over to his party one *John Prochyta*, a Sicilian, who secretly incited all Sicily to revolt, and murder the French who were in the island, without distinction of age or sex. This happened on Easter Sunday, in the year one thousand two hundred

and eighty two. As the first bell for vespers was the signal of execution throughout the island, this massacre is called *The Sicilian Vespers*.

Q. Is the city of Amsterdam mentioned in this century?

A. Yes; in one thousand two hundred and seventy five. *Florent V.* Count of Holland, exempted it from all toll, as an idemnification for several losses which it had sustained from the Hollanders.

Q. Was not the first race of the Counts of Holland extinct a short time after?

A. In one thousand two hundred and ninety nine, by the death of *John I.* the House of Hainault succeeded, and furnished four Counts; *John II. William III. William IV.* and *Margaret*.

FOURTEENTH CENTURY.

Q. What remarkable event happened in this century under the reign of *Albert* of Austria?

A. The revolt of the Swiss against this Emperor, their sovereign. The cantons of Uri, Schwitz, and Underwalden, were the first which in one thousand three hundred and three threw off the yoke, and took up arms.

Q. Who were the chiefs of this conspiracy?

A. Three individuals: *Walther Furst*, of Uri, *Werner de Stauffach*, of Schwitz, and *Arnold de Melchtal*, of Underwalden, who had the sole conduct of this revolution. The first victory, which they gained at Morgate, in the canton of Schwitz, gave to their country the name of Switzerland which it still bears.

Q. What were the motives of their revolt?

A. The tyrannical government of the imperial bailiffs, which became insupportable to the three cantons. These tyrants committed the inhabitants to prison for the most trifling offence, exacted without mercy the tribute due to the Emperor, and were deaf to the complaints of the people. The bailiff *Griessler* went so far as to place a hat upon a pole at Altorf, and exact the same honors to

be paid to it as to his own person. *William Tell* was the first who refused to yield the prescribed honors to the hat, and was condemned to shoot an apple off the head of his only son. He had the good luck to hit the apple without killing his son. The bailiff, seeing another arrow under *Tell's* cloke, asked what that was for. "To have shot you to the heart," said *Tell*, "if I had killed my son." Upon this the people took up arms.

Q. Did *Albert* reign long?

A. He reigned till one thousand three hundred and eight. This year, which was the tenth of his reign, he was killed by *John* of Austria, his nephew, the son of his own brother.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Henry* of Luxembourg, a wise and magnanimous prince, mentioned in history under the name of *Henry VII.* He was crowned at Rome in the year one thousand three hundred and twelve. As he was preparing to set out for Naples, in order to make war on *Robert* of Anjou, the son of *Charles II.* he was poisoned by a Dominican monk in the bread of the Eucharist, and died near *Sienne*, in the year one thousand three hundred and thirteen.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. *Lewis*, Duke of Bavaria, of whom we will speak hereafter.

Q. In what state was the church?

A. The Popes laboured only to increase their authority, and to corrupt the pure doctrines of religion. *Boniface VIII.* who was a detestable character, established the jubilee in the year one thousand three hundred.

Q. What were the other actions of this Pope?

A. Under false pretences suggested by his ambition, he excommunicated *Philip the Fair*; but that prince sent troops into Italy, and took him prisoner at *Anania*, from whence he was conducted to Rome, where he died of rage and despair. The historians of that time say, that "*Boniface* entered upon the pontificate like a fox, that he reigned like lion, and that he died like a dog." His death happened in the year one thousand three hundred and three.

Q. What events followed?

A. *Benedict XI.* succeeded him, and declared the excommunication of *Philip the Fair* null.

Q. What other memorable actions did this Pope perform?

A. He abolished the Templars, an order of knight-hood which had been established in the twelfth century, for the purpose of making war upon the Infidels.

Q. How was this effected?

A. The Knights Templars being extremely rich, and possessing several convents in different parts of Europe, Pope *Clement V.* who had succeeded *Benedict XII.* entered into an agreement with the King of France to destroy them, in order to share their possessions. To this end, atrocious accusations were produced against them, their Grand Master, and the principal men of their order, who were all persons of rank, were burnt alive, and all their foundations in Europe utterly abolished.

Q. Who succeeded *Philip the Fair*?

A. His son, *Lewis Hutin*, who reigned only sixteen months, and was, in one thousand three hundred and sixteen, succeeded by his brother *Philip the Long*. Upon his death, in one thousand three hundred and twenty two, *Charles the Fair*, his brother, ascended the throne, and reigned till the year one thousand three hundred and twenty eight, when he died without issue.

Q. Who reigned in France after these princes?

A. *Philip de Valois*, son of *Charles de Valois*, the brother of *Philip the Fair*. This succession caused long and sanguinary wars in France.

Q. How so?

A. *Edward III.* King of England, who was the son of *Isabella*, daughter of *Philip the Fair*, laid claim to the crown of France. The French opposed to his pretensions the Salic law, which exclude females from the government; but *Edward* not admitting this objection, assumed the title of King of France, which his successors have retained, and commenced a war, in which France had greatly the disadvantage.

Q. Let us now return to the Emperors. What have you to observe of *Lewis* of Bavaria?

A. The Emperor *Lewis V.* was elected in the year

one thousand three hundred and fourteen, and died one thousand three hundred and forty seven, having sustained continued vexations from the Popes, who excommunicated him, and deposed him from the imperial dignity, in which, however, he had, notwithstanding, address to maintain himself.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Charles* of Luxemburg, called *Charles IV.* son of *John*, King of Bohemia. It was this prince who composed the Golden Bull. He reigned till the year one thousand three hundred and seventy eight, and was succeeded by his son *Winceslas*, King of Bohemia.

Q. In what state was the Margraviate of Brandenburg?

A. *Otho I.* succeeded his father *Albert the Bear*, who died in one thousand one hundred and sixty nine. He lived till one thousand one hundred and ninety eight, when *Otho II.* ascended the throne, which he possessed till his death, Anno Domini one thousand two hundred and six. *Albert II.* his brother, succeeded him, and left two sons, *John* and *Otho III.* who reigned jointly during forty years. *John II.* son of *John I.* died in one thousand two hundred and eighty five, and was succeeded by *Conrad*, who lived till one thousand three hundred and four. *John III.* his son, next ascended the throne, but died the following year, when *Woldemar* succeeded him, and terminated his life in one thousand three hundred and nineteen. *Henry*, his son, surnamed *Lackland*, next filled the throne, which he left, by his death, to *Woldemar II.* who, as also *John IV.* his successor, died without children. All these princes were of the house of Saxony.

Q. How was the Margraviate disposed of afterwards?

A. The Emperor *Lewis*, of Bavaria, gave it to his son *Lewis*, as a fief devolved to the empire.

Q. Did not this meet with some opposition?

A. The princes of the houses of Saxony and Anhalt pretended that the electorate belonged to them, and produced a man whom they affirmed to be *Woldemar II.* returned from a long pilgrimage, which he had undertaken to expiate his sins, agreeably to the superstition of those

times. Some authors say that this man was a miller, called *John Rebock*, who bore a resemblance to *Woldemar II.* However this may be, the princes of Anhalt, who supported him, were obliged to desist from their enterprise, and the electorate remained annexed to the house of Bavaria.

Q. Was the reign of the Emperor *Wenceslas* fortunate?

A. No; he was a prince of no merit. In the year one thousand four hundred, which was the second of his reign, he was deposed by the common consent of the whole empire.

Q. Was his reign in any respect memorable?

A. Yes; for the invention of gunpowder, by *Berthold Schwartz*,* a German monk.

Q. In what year did *Philip de Valois*, King of France, die?

A. In one thousand three hundred and fifty. He was succeeded by his son *John*, who was defeated by the English in an engagement near *Cressy*, in *Poitou*, Anno Domini one thousand three hundred and fifty six. *Edward*, Prince of Wales, who commanded the English army, took *John* prisoner, and carried him to England, from whence he did not return till he had paid an immense sum for his ransom.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Charles V.* his son, surnamed the *Wise*, who died in the year one thousand three hundred and eighty, and was succeeded by his son *Charles VI.*

Q. In what state was the empire of Constantinople?

A. It was on its decline. *Andronicus*, the son of *Michael Palaeologus*, died in one thousand three hundred and thirty two, leaving his two sons, *John* and *Manuel*, under the tutelage of *John Cantacuzene*, who seized the empire. He was dispossessed of it sixteen years after, and *John Palaeologus* ascended the throne, which he filled till the year one thousand three hundred and eighty four.

* Gunpowder was, however, known prior to *Schwartz*.

He was succeeded by *Maximilian*, who lived in the ensuing century.

Q. At what time did Holland revert to the house of Bavaria?

A. In the year one thousand three hundred and fifty five.

Q. How many Counts were there of this house?

A. Four; *William V. Albert, William VI. and Jacqueline*.

Q. Was their government tranquil?

A. By no means; the provinces were continually a prey to troubles occasioned by two factions, known by the name of *Hoeksche* and *Cabbeljanssche*, whose fury lasted nearly one hundred and fifty years. The province of Guelders was also divided into two factions, which in the same manner made war upon each other.

FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

Q. Did the Emperor of Bavaria reign long?

A. He reigned ten years, and died, Anno Domini one thousand four hundred and ten, at Oppenheim, whence his corpse was carried to Heidelberg.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Sigismund*, the son of *Charles IV.* and brother of *Wenceslaus*.

Q. Was *Sigismund* a good Emperor?

A. He has been commended by all historians, though his civil virtues were not accompanied with those qualities necessary to constitute a warrior.

Q. Did not the Turks, towards this time, begin to make a figure in Europe?

A. The true beginning of the empire of the Turks may be dated from *Ottoman*, who reigned towards the year one thousand three hundred and one. He was succeeded by *Orchan* his son, about the year one thousand three hundred and twenty seven; and upon his death, his son *Amurath I* ascended the throne, Anno Domini one thousand three hundred and fifty eight. It was this

prince who first entered Europe, where he made himself master of Adrianople in the year one thousand three hundred and sixty three.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Bajazet I.* his son, in the year one thousand three hundred and eighty nine. In one thousand three hundred and ninety eight he was defeated in a battle, and taken prisoner by *Tamerlane*, a Tartar prince, one of the greatest conquerors that ever appeared in the world.

Q. Did *Bajazet* die in captivity ?

A. Yes ; he died in the year one thousand four hundred and two, in an iron cage, in which, by the order of *Tamerlane*, he was kept confined. *Tamerlane* himself died a short time after.

Q. Do any of *Tamerlane's* posterity remain ?

A. His descendants reigned some time at *Samarcand*, in the country now called *Usbeck Tartary* ; but the race of *Tamerlane* has been preserved with the greatest eclat in *Indostan*, in the persons of the Great Moguls, who derive their origin from this conquering Tartar, but who make no great figure in our time.

SIXTH PERIOD.

FROM FREDERICK I. ELECTOR OF BRANDENBURG, TO
THE PEACE OF TESHEN, CONCLUDED MAY 13, 1779.
362 YEARS.

Q. In what state were the affairs of the empire and the church ?

A. The ignorance and ambition of the ecclesiastics created a general disorder. There were at this time no less than three Popes, who mutually excommunicated each other, and who, supported by the princes of their several parties, stirred up dreadful dissensions and troubles in all the states of Europe.

A. What remedy was found for these disorders ?

Q. The Emperor *Sigismund*, with the consent of the other princes of the empire, caused a council to be assem-

Q. Did any thing memorable occur in the reign of this princess ?

A. She granted to the country and cities certain privileges, known by the name of the *Great Charter*, which was signed the fourteenth of March, one thousand four hundred and seventy seven, and which, among others, contained these articles : " That *Mary* should not marry without the consent of the states ; that employments would be given only to the natives of the country ; that lawsuits, the judgment of which belonged to the tribunals of the cities, should not be carried into a court of justice at the Hague, but by way of appeal ; that the inhabitants should not be summoned to judgment out of the country ; that the magistrates should be reestablished upon the ancient footing, &c. ; that the cities should not be obliged to sign any petition to which they had not given their consent ; that they should not be bound by any law or ordinance contrary to the privileges of the cities." It is from this time what is called the liberties and privileges of the Low Countries may be dated.

Q. To whom was this princess married ?

A. To *Maximilian*, Duke of Austria ; she died in the year one thousand four hundred and eighty two. Her only son *Philip II.* succeeded to the throne, by which the sovereignty of these provinces passed to the house of Austria.

Q. Was the Emperor *Sigismund* still alive ?

A. No ; he died towards the end of the year one thousand four hundred and thirty seven, at the age of seventy. His reign was disturbed by the wars of the Hussites, who, headed by *John Zisca*, a Bohemian gentleman, several times defeated the imperial armies, and struck terror into all the neighbouring states. *Zisca* died in one thousand four hundred and twenty four, but his party vigorously maintained the war after his death.

Q. Who attained the imperial dignity after the death of *Sigismund* ?

A. *Albert* of Austria was invested with it. He was a very valiant prince, but died the second year of his reign, in the month of November, one thousand four

hundred and thirty nine. His successor was *Frederick*, the son of *Ernest*, Duke of Austria; who reigned till the year one thousand four hundred and ninety three.

Q. Who reigned at this time in France ?

A. *Charles VI.* who having ascended the throne in one thousand three hundred and eighty, died in one thousand four hundred and twenty two, in the forty second year of his reign. This Prince, whose understanding was deranged, was almost constantly under the tutelage of his uncles, *John*, Duke of Berry, and *Philip*, Duke of Burgundy, who abused their authority, and reduced the kingdom of France to the greatest extremities. *Henry* of Lancaster, King of England, profiting by these disorders, and supported by the Duke of Burgundy, made himself master of almost the whole kingdom of France.

Q. Did this happen during the life of *Charles VI.* ?

A. *Henry V.* landed an army in France, in the year one thousand four hundred and fifteen, and married *Catharine*, the daughter of *Charles VI.* in one thousand four hundred and eighteen, boldly carrying his views to the crown of France, in exclusion of the legitimate heir *Charles VII.* Death, however, disappointed his hopes, for he expired in one thousand four hundred and twenty two, the same year as his father in law.

Q. What was the issue of these troubles ?

A. *Charles VI.* being dead, the partisans of *Charles VII.* proclaimed him King of France; but the English and Burgundian party, which was the most powerful, proclaimed *Henry VI.* the son of *Henry V.* who was then an infant. The English ever victorious, had reduced *Charles VII.* to the last extremities, when a simple country girl, called *Joan of Arc*, but more generally *the Maid of Orleans*, offered her services to *Charles*, and by her heroic exploits entirely changed the face of affairs.

Q. What was the end of this heroine ?

A. The English having made her prisoner in an engagement, caused her to be burned alive for a witch, in the year one thousand four hundred and thirty one. From this time their affairs in France took a different turn. In one thousand four hundred and thirty one they

lost General *Talbot*, an officer equally illustrious for his valour and his virtues, and were driven out of Normandy and Guienne; insomuch, that of all their possessions in France they retained only Calais, which they preserved till late in the sixteenth century.

Q. In what year did *Charles VII.* die?

A. He died in one thousand four hundred and sixty one, and was succeeded by his son *Lewis XI.*

Q. Let us now return to the Margraviate of Brandenburg. What have you to say of the Elector *Frederick II.*?

A. This Prince was born at Tangermunde, in the year one thousand four hundred and thirteen. He was first only the Electoral prince, but the Emperor *Sigismund*, in the year one thousand four hundred and thirty two, made him Protector of the council of Basle, though he was only twenty two years of age. In one thousand four hundred and forty one, he married *Catharine*, the daughter of *Frederick*, Elector of Saxony.

Q. Did not this prince give some remarkable instances of his greatness of soul?

A. Yes, on several occasions; but that which merits particular attention is his refusal, from a principle of equity, of two crowns; that of Poland, which was offered to him, and that of Bohemia, of which the Pope would have despoiled *George Podiebrad*, because he favoured the party of the Hussites.

Q. Did not *Frederick* signalize himself also in war?

A. He defeated the Poles and Prussians, who had besieged the city of Frankfort, on the Oder. *George Podiebrad*, and *Lewis*, Duke of Bavaria, attempted to take possession of Lower Lusatia, but he made a vigorous resistance. This war concluded in one thousand four hundred and sixty two, by an agreement, which confirmed to the Elector the possession of Cothus, Peitz, Teupitz and Berenwald: the rest of Lusatia was ceded to *George Podiebrad*.

Q. Were these all the wars that the Elector *Frederick* had to sustain?

A. He made war in Pomerania, in order to support

his pretensions to that Dutchy, which upon the death of *Otho III* he claimed in virtue of a treaty, to which nothing could be objected; but although his right was incontestable, he consented to an accommodation, by the mediation of *Casimir*, King of Poland. -

Q In what year did he die?

A. In one thousand four hundred and seventy one, the tenth of February. As he had no male children, he ceded the Electorate to his brother *Albert*, a year before his death. This cession was made with the consent of the Emperor.

Q. Did *Henry VI.* reign peaceably in England?

A. No; his reign was long, but far from being happy. *Edward*, Earl of March, the son of *Richard*, Duke of York, revolted and having vanquished him in battle, and put him to death, ascended the throne. *Henry VI.* had reigned thirty nine years and six months.

Q. How long did the reign of *Edward* continue?

A. It continued twenty three years, and ended by his death, in one thousand four hundred and thirty eight. Soon after, his brother *Richard*, Duke of Gloucester, caused the two young Princes, *Edward's* sons, to be murdered, and ascended the throne. The third year of his reign, *Henry*, Duke of Richmond, the son of *John*, brother of *Henry of Lancaster*, declared war against him, vanquished, and slew him in battle.

Q. Did he reign in his stead?

A. Yes; and his reign proved very beneficial to England. He married *Elizabeth*, the daughter of *Edward IV.* and by this marriage united the Houses of York and Lancaster, the disputes of which had occasioned all the troubles in this Century.

Q. Did *Louis XI.* King of France, reign long?

A. He reigned from the year one thousand four hundred and sixty one to one thousand four hundred and eighty three. He was a cruel, suspicious, and perfidious Prince, who neither loved nor was beloved by any one.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Charles VIII.* son, his who by his marriage with

Ann, Duchefs of Bretagne, united that extensive province to the kingdom of France.

Q. Did *Charles VIII.* effect any thing memorable during his reign ?

A. In one thousand four hundred and ninety four he entered Italy with an army, and made himself master of the kingdom of Naples, which, however, he was unable to preserve : the Venetians, the Emperor, the King of Spain, and Pope *Alexander VI.* one of the most vicious characters of the age, uniting their forces against him, they blocked up the passes in his return to France ; but he surmounted every obstacle, and reentered his territories in triumph

Q. Did he live long after ?

A. No ; he died at Amboise, in Touraine, Anno Domini one thousand four hundred and ninety eight, in the fifteenth year of his reign. *Lewis*, Duke of Orleans, who married *Ann* of Bretagne, his widow, succeeded him. His reign belongs to the sixteenth Century.

Q. Let us now return to the affairs of the East. In what state were they at this time ?

A. The power of the Turks became more and more formidable. After the death of *Bajazet*, his son *Soliman* succeeded him ; then followed *Mahomet I.* who died Anno Domini one thousand four hundred and twenty one. *Amurat, II.* his son, who in one thousand four hundred and fifty one was succeeded by his son, *Mahomet II.* by whom the city of Constantinople was taken,

Q. Who were the last Emperors of Constantinople ?

A. *Manuel Pelæologus* died in one thousand four hundred and nineteen. His son *John*, who reigned twenty three years, next ascended the throne, and was, in one thousand four hundred and forty five, succeeded by *Constantine VIII.* in whose reign Constantinople was taken by *Mahomet II.* Anno Domini one thousand four hundred and fifty three. *Constantine* preferred dying, sword in hand, to surrendering to the Turks.

Q. Did *Mahomet II.* long enjoy the fruit of his victories ?

A. Yes ; he lived till the year one thousand four

hundred and eighty one, when his son *Bajazet* ascended the throne. He died in the sixteenth century.

Q. Did *Albert*, Elector of Brandenburg, reign long?

A. From the year one thousand four hundred and seventy one to one thousand four hundred and seventy six.

Q. By what surname is *Albert* known in history?

A. By that of *Achilles*, which is given him on account of his valour.

Q. In what wars was he engaged?

A. He commanded the auxiliary troops of the Emperor *Albert*, of *Austria*, who had declared war against the Poles. He also fought successfully against the Bavarians; but the war in which he more particularly distinguished himself, was that against the city of Nuremberg, the inhabitants of which had burned the town of Winsbach, which belonged to him.

Q. Was it of long continuance?

A. It continued two years, in the course of which nine different engagements took place. Eight of these were in favour of *Albert*, who was seen in every part of the battle, and performed several heroic actions.

Q. Had he other wars to sustain?

A. He sustained one against the Pomeranians in support of his claim to the Duchy of Stettin. This war ended by an accommodation, in one thousand four hundred and seventy one. New and unforeseen differences, however, occurring, *Bogislas*, Duke of Pomerania, married *Margaret*, daughter of *Frederick II.* and agreed that in case the Dukes of Pomerania died without male issue, the province should belong to the Elector *Albert*, or to his descendants.

Q. Did *Albert* appear again in the field of battle?

A. He had the chief command of the armies of the Emperor *Frederick III.* against *Charles*, Duke of Burgundy, who had besieged the city of Neustadt, in the Electorate of Cologne.

Q. Where did he die?

A. At Frankfort on the Main, when he was at the Diet, where *Maximilian I.* was elected Emperor.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. His son *John*, surnamed *Cicero*, on account of his eloquence. He was born in the year one thousand four hundred and fifty five. His mother, a Princess of the house of *Baden*, was called *Margaret*.

Q. Did this Elector signalize himself only by his eloquence?

A. He made war upon *John*, Duke of *Sajan*, who refused to cede to *Barbara*, the Elector's sister, the Duchy of *Crossen*, which had been bequeathed to her by her husband, *Henry*, Duke of *Glowgow* and *Crossen*. After a contest of six years, this duchy was ceded to the Princess, and has remained since that time subject to the Electors of *Brandenburg*.

Q. Did this Prince reign long?

A. He reigned thirteen years, and died *Anno Domini* one thousand four hundred and ninety nine, at the age of forty four. His extreme corpulency incommoded him greatly. He employed various remedies to diminish the weight of his body, but without success.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Joachim I.* his son, of whom we will speak in the succeeding century.

Q. It now only remains to say something of the Emperors of Germany. Did *Frederick III.* reign long?

A. He died the fifty third year of his reign, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety three, and was succeeded by his son *Maximilian I.*

Q. What remarkable events relate to the fifteenth century?

A. Printing was invented about the year one thousand four hundred and forty, at *Mayence*, by *John Gutenberg* and *Schaffer*. America was discovered in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety two, by *Christopher Columbus*, a *Genoese*. This discovery was made under the auspices of *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, who then reigned in *Spain*, and who, two years after, in one thousand four hundred and ninety four, took from the Moors the city of *Grenada*, the only one that the Mahometans then possessed in *Spain*.

SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

Q. How were the Netherlands governed at the beginning of this century ?

A. By the Counts of Holland, of the house of Austria ; *Philip II.* *Charles II.* and *Philip III.*

Q. What happened remarkable under the reign of *Philip II.* ?

A. Under his reign the factions known by the names of *Hoeksche* and of *Cabbeljawsche*, ceased, after having, for near a hundred and fifty years, contended for chimeras, ruined their country, and unmercifully shed the blood of their fellow citizens. The *Hoeksche* was at length worsted, and entirely dispersed, after a naval combat near Bronwershaven ; the remnant of the fugitives, however, still in North Holland supported the sedition of the lower class. *Philip II.* died the twenty fifth of September, one thousand five hundred and six.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. His eldest son, *Charles II.* known by the titles of *Charles I.* King of Spain, and *Charles V.* Emperor of Rome.

Q. By what means did he render himself odious in the Netherlands ?

A. By establishing the Inquisition, and by the edicts which he issued against the doctrine of the reformers, which was at that time called heresy. We shall presently speak of his resignation of the kingdom of Spain and of his death.

Q. Who ascended the throne after him ?

A. *Philip*, the third of that name of the Counts of Holland, and the second of the Kings of Spain. It was in his reign that the revolutions and wars began, which ended in the establishment of the republic of the United Provinces, which will be spoken of hereafter.

Q. In what state was the republic of Venice ?

A. It had risen to a high degree of power by its industry and the commerce it carried on in Europe alone. Its strength was so much increased, as to excite the jeal-

ously of its neighbours, and of a great part of Europe.*

Q. How long did the Emperor *Maximilian* reign?

A. Twenty five years and five months. He died in one thousand five hundred and nineteen, in his sixteenth year.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His grandson *Charles V.* King of Spain, as already observed.

Q. How was he his grandson?

A. *Maximilian* had, in one thousand four hundred and seventy seven, married *Mary*, daughter and heiress of the last Duke of Burgundy, of the house of France. He had a son called *Philip*, who married *Jane*, the daughter of *Ferdinand*, King of Arragon, and of *Isabella*, Queen of Castile and Leon: from this marriage sprung *Charles V.*

Q. Did nothing remarkable happen in Germany under the reign of these Emperors?

A. No event can be mentioned more celebrated than the Reformation, begun by *Martin Luther*, who courageously opposed the abuse of the church of Rome, and particularly that of *Indulgencies*, which *Leo X.* caused to be publicly sold throughout the cities of Europe, and especially in Germany.

Q. What have you to say of *Joachim I.* Elector of Brandenburg.

A. He was a virtuous and learned prince, who in the year one thousand five hundred and six, founded the famous University at Frankfort on the Oder. He married *Elizabeth*, the only daughter of *John*, King of Denmark.

Q. Did he in any respect contribute to the aggrandizement of his states?

A. He acquired the Earldom of Ruppin, which devolved to the Margraviate by the death of *Wichman*, Count of Lindau, the former possessor.

Q. Did *Joachim I.* live long?

A. He lived fifty one years, and died the eleventh of

* Venice with its territories was seized by the French, and delivered up to the house of Austria, by the treaty of Campo Formio, one thousand seven hundred and ninety six.

July, one thousand five hundred and thirty five : he was always strongly attached to the Pope's party.

Q. Who reigned at this time in France ?

A. *Lewis XII* who died Anno Domini one thousand five hundred and fifteen, leaving only two daughters. He was succeeded by *Francis de Valois*, Count of Angoulême, better known by the name of *Francis I.* He had married *Claude*, the eldest daughter of *Lewis XII* and of *Ann* of Bretagne; the other daughter was married to the Duke of Ferrara in Italy. This princess died at Montargis, professing the protestant faith.

Q. Was the reign of *Francis I.* prosperous ?

A. He had been competitor with *Charles V.* for the empire, and almost the whole of his reign was a series of wars against that Emperor. In one thousand five hundred and twenty five, he was defeated at Pavia by the imperial army, and carried prisoner to Madrid, where he was kept till he entered into an engagement to pay a large sum of money for his ransom.

Q. Success then attended the arms of *Charles V.* ?

A. His great power rendered him formidable to all Europe. In one thousand five hundred and twenty seven his troops took and sacked the city of Rome, where they attacked the castle of St. Angelo, and maintained a long siege against Pope *Clement VII.* of the house of Medicis, who had retired thither, and was at length obliged to accept very hard conditions, and to submit to the Emperor.

Q. Did the Reformation of the church make any great progress ?

A. Notwithstanding the persecutions of the Emperor, the Pope, and the King of France, it continued to spread. It was introduced into Brandenburg by the Elector *Johann II.* and in England many persons secretly embraced it.

Q. Who reigned in England ?

A. *Henry VIII.* who in one thousand five hundred and nine succeeded his father *Henry VII.* who died at the age of fifty two, after a reign of twenty four years.

Q. What was the character of *Henry VIII.* ?

A. He cannot be otherwise than ranked among the

worst of princes : his memory is disgraced by his voluptuousness, his divorces, and his cruelty. With no other view than to effect his purpose of divorcing *Catharine*, aunt to the Emperor *Charles V.* and of marrying *Anne Bullen*, he declared himself head of the church of England, and renounced all communion with the Pope, without, however, ceasing to persecute the Protestants, whom he cruelly put to death.

Q. Did he reign long ?

A. He died in the year one thousand five hundred and forty seven, at the age of fifty six, after a reign of thirty eight years.

Q. Did he leave any children ?

A. Yes ; a son and two daughters. *Edward*, who succeeded him, was by one of his wives, named *Jane Seymour* ; *Mary*, by *Catharine* of Arragon, aunt, as before mentioned, to *Charles V.* ; and *Elizabeth* was by *Anne Bullen*. These two princesses succeeded each other as Queens of England.

Q. Did *Edward VI.* reign long ;

A. Only six years, and died at the age of sixteen. Under his reign the Reformation was established, and took deep root in England.

Q. Let us now speak of *Joachim II.* What have you to say of that great prince ?

A. He attained the Electorate in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty five, and was a wise, valiant and virtuous prince. He was twice married ; first to *Magdalene*, daughter of *George*, Duke of Saxony, and afterwards to *Hedwige*, daughter of *Sigismund*, King of Poland.

Q. What were his most memorable actions ?

A. In one thousand five hundred and thirty nine he introduced the Reformation into his states. His mother, *Elizabeth* of Denmark, had privately instructed him in the principles of the Protestant religion.

Q. Did he not signalize himself in war ?

A. As he had displayed his valour on several occasions, he was, with the consent of the Emperor and of the states of the empire, elected general of the imperial army, against the infidels in Hungary.

Q. Was this expedition attended with success?

A. No; he was suffered to want the necessary succours, money, and troops: however, the terror of his arms intimidated the infidels, and prevented their entering the imperial states.

Q. Did he make any new acquisitions?

A. He obtained the title of Duke of Croffen, and right of succession to the Dutchy of Prussia.

Q. In what year did he die?

A. In one thousand five hundred and seventy one, at the age of sixty six. His son *John George* succeeded him.

Q. Let us now return to the Emperor *Charles V.* Did he possess the empire long?

A. In the year one thousand five hundred and fifty six he voluntarily resigned it into the hands of the Electors, and *Ferdinand*, his brother, was elected Emperor in his stead.

Q. Did he preserve the kingdom of Spain?

A. No; he in the same manner resigned that to his son *Philip II.* the Netherlands were comprehended in this resignation, which was made at Ghent. *Charles* afterwards retired into a monastery at Estramadura, called St. Just, where he died two years after in one thousand five hundred fifty eight.

Q. Did *Francis I.* still reign in France?

A. No; he died in the year one thousand five hundred and forty seven, and had left his kingdom to his son *Henry II.* who had married *Catharine de Medicis*, niece to Pope *Clement VII.* This prince was a cruel persecutor of the Reformers throughout his dominions.

Q. Did he reign long?

A. He reigned thirteen years, and died at the age of forty one, Anno Domini one thousand five hundred and fifty nine.

Q. How did he die?

A. In a tournament which he celebrated at Paris he obliged the Earl of Montgomery to break a lance with him; and the Earl's lance piercing the armour of the King, gave him a wound in the eye which proved mor-

tal. He lived ten days after, and expired in the greatest agony.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Francis II.* the eldest of his sons, who reigned only a year and three months. He died at the age of eighteen, in the year one thousand five hundred and sixty. This prince had married *Mary Stuart*, heiress of the kingdom of Scotland : the same who was imprisoned, and in the year one thousand five hundred and eighty seven put to death by the order of *Elizabeth*, Queen of England.

Q. Who ascended the throne after *Francis II.* ?

A. *Charles IX.* who was only ten years of age. He was brought up under the tutelage of his mother, *Catherine de Medicis*, who was a very bad woman, and inspired him with an invincible hatred of the Reformed religion.

Q. Did this hatred produce any bad effects ?

A. Yes ; *Charles* having attained a more advanced age, made a deceitful peace with the Huguenots, and gave his sister *Margaret* in marriage to *Henry*, King of Navarre, who was afterwards King of France : but this peace, and also the marriage, was only a pretence to draw the nobles and principal men of the party to Paris, in order to destroy them.

Q. Did the plot succeed ?

A. Yes ; a few days after the nuptials, the fourteenth of August, one thousand five hundred and seventy two, the King gave the signal, and all the Reformers that were found at Paris were cruelly murdered. The flower of the nobility of the kingdom perished in this butchery. The King of Navarre and the prince were suffered to escape with life, after they had been forced to embrace the Catholic faith.

Q. Did this massacre produce any other consequences ?

A. The Pope caused great rejoiced to be made upon the occasion at Rome, especially after he learns that this bloody execution was extended throughout the kingdom of France. In the meanwhile, the party of the Reformers again took up arms in defence of their cause.

Q. Did *Charles IX.* live long after this ?

A. He died at the age of twenty four, in the year one thousand five hundred and seventy four. It is said that he shed blood at all the pores of his body. He was succeeded by his brother *Henry III.* who had been elected the preceding year, one thousand five hundred and seventy three, King of Poland, and was then in that kingdom.

Q. In what manner did he leave it ?

A. He left it clandestinely, and returned to France, where he was acknowledged King. His reign was unfortunate, and his end tragical.

Q. Give a short account of the events ?

A. The princes of the house of Guise had insinuated themselves, under the pretext of religion, into the affections of the people, and endeavoured to dethrone the King. *Henry III.* in consequence of this, convoked the states at Blois, in the year one thousand five hundred and eighty nine, and there caused *Henry*, Duke of Guise, and the Cardinal of Lorraine, his brother, to be assassinated. An insurrection of the people immediately ensued, and the Pope excommunicated him.

Q. What happened afterwards ?

A. *Henry III.* was obliged to have recourse to the Reformers, who, under the command of *Henry*, King of Navarre, marched to his assistance. The King of France, having proceeded as far as St. Cloud, on his way to reduce the city of Paris, a Jacobin monk, named *John Clement*, wounded him mortally in the lower part of the belly with a knife, in the year one thousand five hundred and eighty nine, when he had only attained his thirty eighth year.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Henry*, King of Navarre, under the title of *Henry IV.* Of the four sons which *Henry II.* left at his death, not one, nor any of their lineage, remained at the end of thirty years ; a circumstance which may be regarded as a just punishment for their cruel persecutions of the Reformers.

Q. Who succeeded *Edward VI.* in the throne of England ?

A. *Mary*, his sister, who had married *Philip II.* King

of Spain. She attempted to reestablish Popery, and with this view, committed unheard of barbarities. She reigned only five years, and died at the age of forty two, Anno Domini one thousand five hundred and fifty eight.

Q. Who succeeded her ?

A. *Elizabeth*, her sister, who reestablished the Reformed religion. She was one of the most illustrious sovereigns that ever sat on the English throne. She, however, discovered a persecuting spirit, and committed many acts of cruelty. She died in the beginning of the seventeenth century, after a long and prosperous reign.

Q. Was the reign of the Emperor *Ferdinand I.* happy ?

A. He was a prince estimable for his virtues and piety, and was no enemy to the Protestants. He reigned from the year one thousand five hundred and fifty six, to one thousand five hundred and sixty four, and died at the age of sixty one.

Q. Did any thing memorable occur during his reign ?

A. The conclusion of the council of Trent, Anno Domini one thousand five hundred and sixty three. The Catholic princes, in conjunction with the Popes, had assembled this council, in order to put an end to all the religious differences ; but the intrigues of the Popes caused this council, instead of lessening the troubles, to increase them.

Q. Who succeeded *Ferdinand I.* ?

A. His son *Maximilian II.* an excellent Emperor, very favourable to the Protestants, and just to all mankind. He died at the age of fifty nine, in the year one thousand five hundred and seventy six, after a reign of twelve years ; leaving the empire to his son, *Rodolphus II.* who died in the seventeenth century.

Q. What occasioned the revolution, which in this century enfranchised the United Provinces from the dominion of Spain ?

A. *Charles V.* in one thousand five hundred and fifty five, ceded the Netherlands, and the year following, Spain, to his son *Philip II.* The severe and tyrannical conduct of this prince, who designed to violate the privi-

leges of the Netherlands, which he had sworn to maintain, was the cause of the revolution.

Q. How did he manifest his intentions?

A. By the renewal of the edicts of *Charles V.* against what was called heresy, by which was meant the doctrine of the Reformers.

Q. What rendered the nobles of the Netherlands most averse to the government of Spain?

A. The conduct of Cardinal *Granville*, who possessed the sole confidence of *Margaret*, Governess of the state.

Q. What measures did the nobles take?

A. They formed a confederacy, and in one thousand five hundred and sixty six presented a petition for the preservation of their privileges, and the abolition of the Inquisition.

Q. What name was given to this confederacy?

A. That of the *Beggars*, or *Mendicants*.

Q. To whom did *Philip* confide the care of composing these differences?

A. To the Duke of *Alva*, the most cruel of men, who established a council, which was soon called the *council of blood*, from the torrents of blood which were shed by its decrees.

Q. Who were the chiefs of the malcontents?

A. The Prince of Orange, with the Counts of *Ermon* and *Hoorn*,

Q. What was the fate of these two Counts?

A. They were beheaded at *Bruxelles* the third of June, one thousand five hundred and sixty eight. The Prince of Orange and the other nobles of the same party were banished, and their estates confiscated.

Q. What were the consequences of this severity?

A. *William*, Prince of Orange, raised troops and began a war, which continued till the treaty of peace concluded at *Ghent*, the eighth of November, one thousand five hundred and seventy six. At the same time he instituted the University at *Leyden*, which was endowed the eighth of February, one thousand five hundred and seventy five; and ten years after, that of *Francker*, which was endowed the twenty ninth of July, one thousand five hundred and eighty five.

Q. What was the principal basis of the Republic of the United Provinces ?

A. The treaty of *Union*, concluded at Utrecht the twenty third of January, one thousand five hundred and seventy nine.

Q. Did the United States take no step still more ceremonious to confirm them in the possession of their liberty ?

A. Yes ; the twenty seventh of July, one thousand five hundred and eighty one, they declared that King *Philip* had forfeited the sovereignty, and that all the inhabitants were disengaged from their oath of fidelity.

Q. Was not the joy occasioned by this success allayed ?

A. Yes ; by the assassination of the Prince of Orange, who was killed at Delf on the tenth of July, one thousand five hundred and eighty four, by *Balthasar Gerard*, a Burgundian by birth.

Q. In what state were the affairs of the confederates after the death of the Prince of Orange ?

A. The Spaniards took Bruxelles and Anvers, and at the same time insured Zutphen, Nimeguen, Dœsburg, and other cities of Guelders. This obliged the states to offer the sovereignty to France, who refused it. They then made the same offer to *Elizabeth*, Queen of England, who refused it also, but sent them a certain reinforcement of troops ; to insure the payment of which, the confederates were obliged to cede Brille and Flushing as a pledge.

Q. Who had the command of the auxiliary troops ?

A. The Earl of Liecester, who, a short time after his arrival, was declared Governor General of the United Provinces, and Prince *Maurice*, the son of *William*, Prince of Orange, Stadtholder. In this quality he acted under the authority of the Earl of Leicester.

Q. What was the conduct of the Earl with respect to the government ?

A. He employed such violent measures to extend his authority, that he rendered himself odious to the states of Holland, the magistrates of the cities, and the merchants. He suffered the ministers and the people to act

without restraint, and had formed the project of arresting Prince *Maurice*, and *John Oldenbarneveld*, Advocate of Holland, so that there was danger of falling from one tyranny under another. The Earl, however, at length threw up the government, and departed for England, Anno Domini one thousand five hundred and eighty seven.

Q. What success had the arms of the states under the conduct of Prince *Maurice*?

A. Their success was great; Breda, Zutphen, Nimeguen, Steenwyk, Cowerdin, Gertruidenberg, Groningen, &c. were taken between the years one thousand five hundred and ninety and one thousand five hundred and ninety four. In one thousand five hundred and ninety six the states concluded a treaty with France and England, which is regarded as the first public act by which their independence was acknowledged, and which was followed by the truce of twelve years.

Q. Let us now return to the Elector *George*, the son and successor of *Joachim II.*?

A. His mother, called *Magdelene*, was the daughter of *George*, Duke of Saxony. He had three wives: *Sophia*, of the house of the Dukes of Lignitz; *Sabina*, daughter of the Margrave *George*, of Anspach; and *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Joachim Ernestus*, Prince of Anhalt.

Q. What was his character?

A. He was mild, polite, judicious, and strongly attached to religion. Although in the early part of his life he had given proofs of valour, he endeavoured to cultivate peace throughout the states. He led a quiet life, and enjoyed so excellent a constitution, that he had scarcely ever experienced any sickness.

Q. Did he make any acquisitions?

A. He joined New Marck to his estates, and obtained from the Emperor an hereditary claim on the domains of Beesman and Storckau.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Joachim Frederick*, his son by a former wife. We will speak of him in the following century.

Q. Can you name the Emperors of the Turks who reigned in this century?

A. Bajazet II. from the year one thousand four hundred and eighty one to one thousand five hundred and twelve. *Selim* from one thousand five hundred and twelve to one thousand five hundred and twenty. *Soliman II.* one of the greatest princes that reigned over the Turks. He rendered himself master of almost all Hungary, and of the Island of Rhodes ; and in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty nine besieged Vienna, though he was not able to take it. He died in the year one thousand five hundred and sixty six, at the age of sixty, after a reign of forty six years.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. His son *Selim II.* who, in the years one thousand five hundred and seventy one and one thousand five hundred and seventy two, took the Isle of Cyprus from the Venetians, and made other conquests. He died, after a reign of eight years, in one thousand five hundred and seventy four. *Amurat III.* succeeded him, and after a reign of twenty years died, Anno Domini one thousand five hundred and ninety five. He was succeeded by *Mahomet III.* who lived till the following century.

SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

Q. Was the reign of *Rodolphus* tranquil ?

A. Yes ; he was fond of letters and the mathematics, and patronized the celebrated *Kepler*. He passed a life of celibacy, and died at Prague, which he made his usual residence, in one thousand six hundred and twelve, after a reign of thirty five years.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Matthias*, his brother, who in the early part of his life had been Governor of the Netherlands. He fixed his residence at Vienna, and died in one thousand six hundred and nineteen, after a reign of seven years. His successor was *Ferdinand II.* Archduke of Austria, a prince who bore an invincible hatred to the Protestants.

Q. What was the cause of this hatred ?

A. A very long and fatal war, which is usually call-

ed *the war of thirty years*. It began through the kingdom of Bohemia, which in one thousand six hundred and nineteen refused to acknowledge *Ferdinand II.* for its King, and, in his stead, chose *Frederick V.* Elector Palatine.

Q. Did the new sovereign support his dignity ?

A. No ; he was crowned at Prague in the year one thousand six hundred and twenty, and the same year, having been defeated by the imperial troops, was forced to take to flight. This revolution caused the annihilation of the protestant religion throughout the kingdom of Bohemia.

Q. What afterwards became of *Frederick V.* ?

A. He was deprived of the Electorate, and retired to Holland ; and died twelve years after at Mayence, in the year one thousand six hundred and thirty two. His wife, *Elizabeth*, daughter of *James I.* King of England, survived him thirty years.

Q. What was afterwards the fate of the Protestant states of the empire ?

A. Their religion and their liberty must have been effectually extinguished, if *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of Sweden, had not entered Germany with an army which checked the fury of the Imperialists, whom they were no longer in a state to resist. This great prince, after a succession of glorious exploits, was killed in a battle at Lutzen, in the year one thousand six hundred and thirty two. His troops, however, gained the victory, and continued the war with success after his death.

Q. Did *Ferdinand II.* live till the conclusion of this war ?

A. No ; he died before the peace in one thousand six hundred and thirty seven, at the age fifty nine, the eighteenth year of his reign. He was succeeded by *Ferdinand III.* his son.

Q. In what state were the United Provinces at the beginning of this century ?

A. Some disadvantages had attended their arms, which led them to conclude a truce of twelve years with Spain, the ninth of April, one thousand six hundred and nine, at Anvers.

Q. Did they after this enjoy peace?

A. No ; their internal government was disturbed by the disputes of the *Gomarists* and of the *Arminians*, in which politics had a greater influence than religion.

Q. What steps were taken to terminate these differences?

A. A synod was held at Dordrecht, in which the disputants were condemned, their meetings prohibited, and their ministers banished ; but after some years they were restored to the free exercise of their religion. In these troubles *Barneveldt*, Advocate of Holland, who had long distinguished himself in the service of his country, lost his life.

Q. In what year did Prince *Maurice* die ?

A. In one thousand six hundred and twenty five. The dignity of Stadtholder was transferred to his brother *Frederick Henry*, who carried on the war with success by land, while Admiral *Van Tromp* beat the Spanish fleet to the Downs, the twenty first of October, one thousand six hundred and thirty two.

Q. How far did the career of *Frederick Henry* extend ?

A. To the year one thousand six hundred and forty seven. *William II.* his son, a prince much inclined to war, succeeded him.

Q. Was the war then continued ?

A. No ; it was concluded by the famous treaty, known by the name of the peace of Westphalia. This treaty was signed at Munster, October the twenty fourth, one thousand six hundred and forty eight, and was given and received throughout Europe as a fundamental and perpetual law. It changed the face of politics, and ought even to serve as a basis to the imperial capitulations. By this treaty *Philip IV.* acknowledged the states of the seven United Provinces independent *states, countries, and sovereigns*. Such was the confirmation of a liberty which was the fruit of a war of eighty years.

Q. How did the Stadtholder act afterwards ?

A. He was endeavouring to rekindle the flames of war, when the small pox carried him off, in the year one thousand six hundred and fifty.

Q. Did he leave a successor ?

A. He left a posthumous son, whom two of the Provinces acknowledged Stadtholder, whilst the other five, in the mean while, remained without a chief of that name.

Q. Had Holland wars to maintain during the minority of this prince?

A. Yes; with England during the administration of *Cromwell*; with Portugal on the subject of Brazil; with England under *Charles II.*; with the Bishop of Munster; and with France in one thousand six hundred and seventy two.

Q. What was the consequence of this last war?

A. The elevation of *William III.* Prince of Orange, to the Stadtholdership, and to all the dignities which his predecessors had possessed. These, in one thousand six hundred and seventy four, were proclaimed hereditary in the male line.

Q. Did not this produce other consequences?

A. Yes; the brothers *De Witt*, who had had the principal authority in the state, were first unworthily calumniated, and afterwards cruelly murdered by the populace, in the month of August in the same year.

Q. How did *William* employ himself?

A. He was continually occupied in war against the French; and having, in one thousand six hundred and seventy seven, married *Mary*, daughter of the Duke of York, in one thousand six hundred and eighty eight he dethroned his father in law, who, by the death of his brother *Charles II.* was become king of England.

Q. Let us now resume the history of France. Did not *Henry IV.* experience some difficulty in attaining the crown?

A. Almost the whole of the Catholic party had entered into a league against him and his predecessor; the Protestants supported him; but they were not the most powerful. *Henry* was unable to resist the temptation, and in order to ascend the throne, embraced the Roman Catholic religion; but notwithstanding this concession, it was with great difficulty he obtained his absolution of the Pope. At length, however, after long opposition, he beheld himself in peaceful possession of the kingdom.

Q. Did he reign long?

A. From the year one thousand five hundred and eighty-nine to one thousand six hundred and ten, when he died at the age of fifty six.

Q. In what manner did he die?

A. He was stabbed at Paris, the fourteenth of May, by a villain named *Francis Ravallac*. It cannot be doubted that the blow was suggested by some other person; but the iniquitous mystery was never developed.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Lewis XIII.* his son, by *Mary de Medicis*, whom he had married after having divorced *Margaret de Valois*, the daughter of *Henry II.* The feeble character of *Lewis XIII.* who all his life suffered himself to be governed, is well known. It was nevertheless under his reign, that France laid the foundation of that greatness to which she was elevated under his successor.

Q. To whom was it due?

A. To *Armand du Pleiss*, Cardinal *Richelieu*, one of the most able politicians the world ever produced, and who rendered himself no less illustrious by the protection he afforded to the sciences and the belles lettres. It is to him that the French Academy is indebted for its establishment. This great minister died at Paris, at the age of fifty eight, on the fourth of December, one thousand six hundred and forty two.

Q. Did not *Lewis XIII.* die soon after?

A. Yes; in the year following, on the fourth of May. This monarch was in the forty second year of his age, and had reigned thirty three years.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Lewis XIV.* during his life surnamed the Great. This is the longest reign mentioned in history. It is filled with great events, and is, at the same time, signalized by a crowd of great geniuses, and by chef-d'œuvres of every kind, which ought justly to render it one of the principal epochs of universal history. We shall not enter into any detail on this subject, as histories of that period are in the hands of every one.

Q. In what year did *Elizabeth*, Queen of England, die?

A. In the year one thousand six hundred and three, at the age of seventy, after a reign of forty four years.

Q. Who succeeded her?

A. *James Stuart*, King of Scotland, the son of *Mary*, whom *Elizabeth* had beheaded.

Q. Whence did he derive his claim to the throne of England.

A. From *Margaret*, his grandmother, daughter of *Henry VII.*

Q. What was the character of *James I.*?

A. He was a prince of erudition, who meddled with controversial divinity, and composed some books on the subject; but he was little formed to govern a great people. He abandoned his son in law, the Elector Palatine, to his enemies, and is accused of having caused the misfortunes which happened to his son and successor, *Charles I.* by endeavouring to exculpate the Catholics concerned in the conspiracy, called the Gunpowder Plot, the object of which was to blow up the Parliament and the King on the fifth of November, one thousand six hundred and five; but he never attempted to extend this lenity to the Jesuites, because they had been juridically convicted as the authors of the horrid plot.

Q. In what year did *James I.* die?

A. In one thousand six hundred and twenty six, at the age of fifty nine. *Charles I.* his successor, reigned twenty three years, and lost his head on the scaffold at Whitehall, February nine, one thousand six hundred and forty nine, by the rebellion of his own subjects. He was then forty nine years of age.

Q. Into whose hands did the sovereign power fall after the death of *Charles I.*?

A. *Oliver Cromwell*, a private gentleman of England, reduced the whole kingdom beneath his power, and governed it with an absolute authority, under the title of *Protector*, which was given him by a Parliament wholly at his devotion. He was invested with it in one thousand six hundred and fifty three, and preserved it till his death, which happened in one thousand six hundred and fifty eight.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. His son, *Richard Cromwell*, who being incapable of the high post, gave place to the recall of *Charles II.* the son of *Charles I.* who began to reign Anno Domini one thousand six hundred and sixty, and died one thousand six hundred and eighty five, aged fifty five years.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. His brother *James II.* Duke of York, who, resigning himself to evil counsels, made an attempt upon the constitution of the realm, and endeavoured to introduce the Roman Catholic religion, which he professed. This occasioned a revolution, and *James II.* being obliged to fly the kingdom, the crown was jointly possessed by *William*, Prince of Orange, and *Mary* his wife, daughter of *James*. *James II.* died in France in the year one thousand seven hundred and one.

Q. Was the reign of *William III.* prosperous ?

A. He was constantly employed in wars against France. His authority was much abridged in England, but he possessed more in Holland, where he was Stadtholder. He lost his Queen in one thousand six hundred and ninety five ; his death will be seen in the succeeding century.

Q. Let us now return to the Electorate of Brandenburg. Did *Joachim Frederick* live late in this century ?

A. He died in the year one thousand six hundred and eight, at the age of sixty two years and six months, after a tranquil and prosperous reign.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *John Sigismund*, his eldest son, who was born in the year one thousand five hundred and seventy two, and who, in one thousand five hundred and ninety four, married *Anne*, daughter of *Albert Frederick*, Duke of Prussia, and presumptive heiress of the Dutchies of Cleves and Juliers. These states had, after this marriage, devolved to *John Sigismund*, by the death of the last Duke, *John William*, in the year one thousand six hundred and nine.

Q. Did *John Sigismund* make no other acquisitions ?

A. In the year one thousand six hundred and eleven he succeeded *Albert Frederick*, the last Duke of Prussia, and was solemnly invested with that Dutchy by the King, Senators, and states of Poland.

Q. Was his government signalized on any other account?

A. In the year one thousand six hundred and fourteen he introduced into his states the exercise of the Reformed religion, which he embraced himself with great zeal. He died in the year one thousand six hundred and nineteen.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *George William*, his eldest son, who in one thousand six hundred and sixteen married *Elizabeth Charlotte*, the daughter of *Frederick IV.* Elector Palatine.

Q. Did he make any acquisitions?

A. The succession of the Dutchy of Pomerania in the year one thousand six hundred and thirty seven fell to him by the death of *Bogislas XIV.* Duke of that province; but the Swedes seized it, and the house of Brandenburg obtained only a part, after the peace of Munster.

Q. In what year was *George William* born?

A. In one thousand six hundred and twenty. His mother has been already mentioned.

Q. Can you enter into a detail of the actions of this great prince?

A. It is impossible in so short an abridgment. All that can be said is, that he augmented his states by the Archbishoprick of Magdeburg; the Bishopricks of Minden and Halbertstadt; the Earldoms of Ravenstein and Hohenstein, Pomerania, the Bishoprick of Camin, the sovereignty of Prussia, and by several other countries.

Q. In what year did he die?

A. In one thousand six hundred and eighty eight, aged sixty eight years, two months, and twenty three days.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Frederick*, the founder of the kingdom of Prussia, of whom we shall speak in the next century.

Q. Let us now return to the Emperors. Who bore the imperial title after *Ferdinand II*?

A. His son *Ferdinand III.* who attained the empire in one thousand six hundred and thirty seven, and died one thousand six hundred and fifty seven, at the age of

forty nine. In his reign the peace of Munster, which restored tranquillity to all Europe, was concluded.

Q. Who succeeded *Frederick III.* ?

A. *Leopold I.* who lived till the succeeding century, and whose reign was disturbed by continual wars, sometimes against the Turks, and sometimes against France.

Q. We left Spain with *Philip II.* When did he die ?

A. In one thousand five hundred and ninety eight, at the age of seventy one, and was succeeded by *Philip III.* In one thousand five hundred and ten this prince drove all the Moors, amounting to the number of nine hundred thousand, out of Spain. From that time the population of Spain has been much less.

Q. In what year did *Philip III.* die ?

A. In one thousand six hundred and twenty one, at the age of forty three. His successor was *Philip IV.* who died one thousand six hundred and fifty five, at the age of sixty. He was succeeded by *Charles II.* his son, who died without issue, in one thousand seven hundred, at the age of thirty nine.

Q. Let us conclude this century with the Emperors of the Turks.

A. *Mahomet III.* died, Anno Domini one thousand six hundred and three, and was succeeded by *Achmet I.* who died one thousand six hundred and seventeen. *Mustapha*, the brother of *Achmet*, succeeded him, and was deposed by the Janizaries, Anno Domini one thousand six hundred and eighteen. *Osman*, son of *Achmet*, reigned after him, and was strangled by the Janizaries in the year one thousand six hundred and twenty two. *Mustapha* was reestablished on the throne, and the same year again deposed. He was afterwards strangled in prison, Anno Domini one thousand six hundred and thirty nine. *Amurath IV.* reigned from the year one thousand six hundred and twenty three to one thousand six hundred and forty. *Ibrahim*, his brother who succeeded him, was strangled by the Janizaries, in the year one thousand six hundred and eighty four. After him succeeded *Mahomet IV.* his son, who died one thousand six hundred

and ninety three. His successors to the end of the century were *Soliman III.* *Achmet II.* and *Mustapha II.*

EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

Q. Did the Emperor *Leopold* live late in this century?

A. He died in one thousand seven hundred and five, at the age of sixty five.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His son *Joseph*, who died in the year one thousand seven hundred and eleven, at the age of thirty three.

Q. To whom did the empire afterwards devolve?

A. To his brother, *Charles VI.* Archduke of Austria, and competitor with *Philip V.* for the crown of Spain. He was the last Emperor of the house of Austria.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. To the year one thousand seven hundred and forty. He died at the age of fifty five, and left his hereditary estates to the Archduchess *Maria Theresa*, his daughter by *Elizabeth Christiana*, of the house of *Wolfsbuttle*.

Q. On whom was the imperial dignity then conferred?

A. On the Elector of Bavaria, who took the name of *Charles VII.* He died in one thousand seven hundred and forty five, after an unquiet and unfortunate reign.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. *Francis*, Duke of Lorraine, husband of the Queen of Hungary, daughter of the Emperor *Charles IV.* With this Princess *Francis I.* held the reigns of the Empire nearly twenty years, when, August the eighteenth, one thousand seven hundred and sixty five, he was carried off by a sudden death at Inspruck, in the fifty seventh year of his age. He left the Imperial throne to his son *Joseph Benedict Augustus*, King of the Romans, who was then twenty five years of age. He died February twentieth, one thousand seven hundred and ninety, and was

succeeded by *Leopold II.* who died March the first, one thousand seven hundred and ninety two, and was succeeded by his son *Francis*, the present Emperor.

Q. How did the reign of *Louis XIV.* conclude ?

A. This Monarch, after having experienced an uninterrupted course of prosperity, and the most brilliant successes, sustained a reverse equally grievous, and mortifying ; a reverse, however, in which he displayed great strength of mind. He accomplished his design of establishing his grandson upon the throne of Spain. The continual wars which he sustained had exhausted the finances of the kingdom, and reduced it to a state of great debility, in which he left it at his death, which happened Anno Domini one thousand seven hundred and fifteen, in the seventy seventh year of his age, and the seventy third year of his reign.

Q. To whom did he leave the kingdom ?

A. To his great grandson, *Louis XV.* who was then only five years of age.

Q. How were the first years of his reign passed ?

A. Under the regency of *Philip*, Duke of Orleans, which was rendered memorable by one of the most singular occurrences. I allude to the affair of the *Mississippi*, which occasioned such great revolutions in the fortunes of individuals, and in the finances of the state.

Q. What succeeded this regency ?

A. The reign of *Louis XV.* which, whether during the ministry of Cardinal *Fleury*, or from the time the King took the weight of government upon himself, was signalized by events that contributed to the glory and prosperity of France. But in the course of the last war, from the year one thousand seven hundred and fifty five to one thousand seven hundred and sixty two, the face of things changed, France sustained considerable losses, and was reduced to a state of great debility. The return of peace furnished *Louis* with the means of reestablishing his affairs, and of putting his marine upon a formidable footing.

Q. How long did *Louis XV.* reign ?

A. Fifty nine years ; he expired the tenth of May, one thousand seven hundred seventy four, in the sixty

fifth year of his age. His grandson, *Lewis Augustus*, succeeded him, under the title of *Lewis XVI.* at the age of twenty.

Q. Whom did he marry ?

A. *Maria Anne Antoinette*, Archduchess of Austria, the fourteenth of May, one thousand seven hundred and sixty eight. By their marriage there were two Princes and two Princesses.

Q. What happened in Spain during this century ?

A. After the death of *Charles II.* the war for the succession of Spain broke out between *Philip*, grandson of *Lewis XIV.* and *Charles*, afterwards Emperor, under the title of *Charles VI.*

Q. How did it terminate ?

A. *Philip V.* remained peaceable possessor of the throne, and after his death, which happened in one thousand seven hundred and forty nine, left it to *Ferdinand VI.* his son.

Q. How long did the reign of *Ferdinand* continue ?

A. Till the year one thousand seven hundred and fifty nine, in which that prince dying, was succeeded by his brother *Charles III.* who was before King of the two Sicilies.*

Q. Who succeeded *Charles III.* in the kingdom of the two Sicilies ?

A. *Ferdinand Antonio*, the third of his sons, then only eight years old, the eldest being incapable of reigning, and the second succeeding his father in the throne of Spain. A Regency administered affairs during the minority of the King of the two Sicilies. The thirteenth of August, one thousand seven hundred and sixty eight, he married the Archduchess *Maria Louisa Caroline*, daughter of the Emperor *Francis I.* and by this marriage had six children.

Q. What European state borders upon Spain towards the West ?

A. Portugal, known formerly by the name of Lusitania, and the country of the ancient Calciques. It was afterwards inhabited by the Moors, but for a century

* Sicily and Naples, for many ages stiled the Two Sicilies.

past it has belonged to the Spaniards, and is now an hereditary kingdom.

Q. By whom is it governed ?

A. After the death of *Joseph Emanuel*, the fifth King of the house of Braganza, which happened the twenty fourth of February, one thousand seven hundred and seventy seven, his daughter *Mary Francis Isabella* succeeded him ; she ascended the throne of Portugal with her husband *Peter III.* her father's brother, who died the twenty fourth of May, one thousand seven hundred and eighty six ; the fruit of this marriage is three children. *Joseph Francis*, Prince of Brazil, presumptive heir to the crown, born August twenty first, one thousand seven hundred and sixty one, February twenty first, one thousand seven hundred and seventy seven, married his aunt, *Maria Francis Benedictina*, born July twenty fourth, one thousand seven hundred and forty six *

Q. Give some account of the Popes ?

A. In one thousand seven hundred and seventy five, *Giovanni Angelo Brachi*, under the name of *Pius VI.* succeeded *Ganganelli*, or *Clement XIV.* who rendered himself celebrated by the abolition of the order of Monks, who were become formidable, under the name of Jesuits, in the four quarters of the world. *Pius VI.* died in the beginning of the year one thousand eight hundred.

Q. Who occupies the see of Rome at this time ?

A. Cardinal *G. B. Chiaramonti*, who was elected at Venice by the conclave of Cardinals, and now fills the papal chair under the name of *Pius VII.*

Q. Does the present Pope possess equal power with his predecessors ?

A. No ; his temporal power has been long on the decline, and is now but little more than nominal.

Q. Let us now return to England. In what year did *William III.* die ?

A. In one thousand seven hundred and two. He

* This prince died without issue in one thousand seven hundred and eighty eight. His brother, Prince John of Brazil, is now presumptive heir to the throne, and has the chief administration of affairs, his mother, the reigning Queen, having been for some years afflicted with insanity.

was succeeded by Queen *Anne*, his sister in law, who reigned till one thousand seven hundred and fourteen. In this reign England gained many brilliant victories, for which she was indebted to the Duke of Marlborough, one of the greatest generals of modern times.

Q. Who succeeded Queen *Anne*?

A. *George Lewis*, Elector of Hanover, son of the Princess *Sophia*, the daughter of the Princess *Elizabeth*, who married *Frederick V.* King of Bohemia, and Elector Palatine.

Q. How long did this prince reign?

A. Till one thousand seven hundred and twenty seven, when he was succeeded by *George II.* his son, who died October twenty fifth, one thousand seven hundred and sixty, aged seventy seven years.

Q. Who succeeded *George II.*?

A. The prince of Wales, his grandson, under the name of *George III.* In one thousand seven hundred and sixty one, he married *Sophia Charlotte*, Princess of Mecklenburgh Strelitz, by whom he has twelve children still living.*

Q. What happened in the United Provinces after the death of King *William III.* the Stadtholder?

A. New disputes arose concerning the Stadtholdership; and the Princes of the house of Nassau Dietz obtained it only from the province of Friesland, Groningen and the Omelands.

* Of these *George*, Prince of Wales, born one thousand seven hundred and sixty two, in the year one thousand seven hundred and ninety five, married *Caroline*, daughter of the Duke of Brunswick, and niece to his present majesty. By this marriage there is one daughter, the Princess *Charlotte Augusta*, born January seventh, one thousand seven hundred and ninety six.

Frederick, Duke of York, born August sixteenth, one thousand seven hundred and sixty three, Sept. twenty ninth, one thousand seven hundred and ninety one, married *Frederica Charlotte Ulrica*, eldest daughter of the late King of Prussia, by his first consort, *Elizabeth Ulrica*, of Brunswick Wolfenbuttel.

Charlotte Augusta Matilda, Princess Royal, born Sept. twenty ninth, one thousand seven hundred and sixty six, in one thousand seven hundred and ninety seven was married to the hereditary Prince of Wirtemberg.

Q. Did the war of the allies against France, in which Holland took a part, continue?

A. Till one thousand seven hundred and twelve, when a change of affairs in England paved the way to the peace concluded at Utrecht.

Q. Did any alterations happen afterwards in the interior government of the United States?

A. Young Prince *William Charles Henry Friso*, hereditary Stadtholder of Friesland, whose father was in one thousand seven hundred and eleven drowned in passing the *Suyen Sas*, was elected Stadtholder of the country of *Drente*, and some time after, he was raised to the same dignity by the states of the province of *Guelders*.

Q. Whom did this prince marry?

A. *Ann*, Princess Royal of Great Britain. From this marriage sprung Prince *William V.* and the Princess *Caroline*, married to *Charles Christian*, the reigning Prince of *Nassau Weilbourg*.

Q. At what time was *William IV.* raised to the dignity of Stadtholder of the Seven United Provinces?

A. He was proclaimed May fourth, one thousand seven hundred and forty seven, when the French had taken Dutch Flanders, and threatened Zealand with an invasion: that province then declared him Stadtholder, and their example was followed by Holland, Utrecht, and Overijssel: sometime after the post was declared hereditary in the male and female line of the house of Orange. The peace of Aix la Chapelle was signed October eighteenth, one thousand seven hundred and forty eight, by which the states were put in possession of the places they had lost. This prince died October twenty second, one thousand seven hundred and fifty one, and his wife one thousand seven hundred and fifty eight.

Q. Who succeeded to the Stadtholdership?

A. His son *William V.* first under the tutelage of his mother, and after her death, under that of the states and of the Duke of Brunswick. He assumed the dignity May eighth, one thousand seven hundred and seventy six, and in August, one thousand seven hundred and sixty seven, married *Sophia Frederica Wilhelmina*, Princess of Prussia.

fia. By this marriage there are two princes and two princesses.

Q. Does Holland continue under the same government?

A. No; it joined the allied powers against France, in one thousand seven hundred and ninety two; and in one thousand seven hundred and ninety five, was overrun by the French; under whose influence the people obliged the Stadtholder to abdicate his authority, and established a republican government. It is now called the *Batavian Republic*.

Q. Say a few words now on the Ottoman Porte.

A. *Achmet III.* in one thousand seven hundred and three succeeded *Mustapha II.* He was deposed in one thousand seven hundred and thirty, and *Mahomet V.* his successor, reigned till one thousand seven hundred and fifty seven. *Mustapha III.* next ascended the throne, and was succeeded by his brother *Ahmet Hamet*, who was born May eighteenth, one thousand seven hundred and twenty three, and invested with the dignity of Sultan one thousand seven hundred and seventy four. The reigning sovereign is *Selim III.* born in one thousand seven hundred and sixty one, and enthroned in one thousand seven hundred and eighty nine.

Q. Which are the two princes who most attracted the attention of Europe at the beginning of this century?

A. *Charles XII.* and *Peter the Great*.

Q. Who was *Charles XII.*?

A. He was King of Sweden. He ascended the throne in one thousand six hundred and ninety seven, and was for some years the arbiter and terror of the North; but having imprudently penetrated into Russia, his army was routed, and he constrained to take refuge in Turkey. After a series of extraordinary adventures, he reentered his states, and was assassinated by one of his officers, December eighteenth, one thousand seven hundred and eighteen, at the siege of Fredericshall in Norway, at the age of thirty six.

Q. Who succeeded him in the throne of Sweden.

A. His sister *Ulrica Eleonora*, who afterwards resigned the crown to her husband. *Frederick I.* hereditary

Prince of Hesse Cassel, who died without children in one thousand seven hundred and fifty one. This prince was succeeded by *Adolphus Frederick*, of Holstein Eutin, who married *Louisa Ulrica*, of Prussia: he died February twelfth; one thousand seven hundred and seventy one. His son *Gustavus Adolphus*, born January twenty four, one thousand seven hundred and forty six, succeeded him. The fourth of November, one thousand seven hundred and sixty six, this prince married *Sophia Magdelene*, Princess of Denmark, by whom there is a son. In the year one thousand seven hundred and seventy two, August the fourth, he effected some alteration in the form of government, which was afterwards confirmed by the four orders of the realm. At the diet of one thousand seven hundred and seventy nine, the King and the states issued a decree, by which liberty of conscience and the free exercise of their religion was granted to all the different sects dispersed throughout the kingdom.

Q. What states are neighbours to the Swedes?

A. Towards the West the kingdoms of Denmark and Norway, which are the most ancient in Europe. Some historians affirm that the kingdom of Denmark was founded by *Noah* and his descendants; that *Gomer Secundus*, great grandson of *Japhet*, was the first that governed it under the name of Judge. It is now a monarchy.

Q. Who governs Denmark and Norway at this time?

A. *Christian VII.* the fourteenth King of the house of Oldenburgh. He is the son of *Frederick V.* who died in one thousand seven hundred and sixty six, and of *Louisa*, the daughter of *George II.* King of England. He married the Princess *Caroline Matilda*, sister of *George III.* King of England. By this marriage there is a son and daughter. In the year one thousand seven hundred and seventy two, in the night between the sixteenth and seventeenth of January, a revolution took place in the court, by which the reigning Queen, with the ministers *Struensee*, *Brandt*, and other persons, were arrested. The Queen afterwards retired to Zell, where she died of grief the tenth of May, one thousand seven hundred and seventy four. The Princess *Louisa Augusta*,* her daughter.

* She died one thousand seven hundred and ninety five.

ter at the age of fifteen, was married May twenty seventh, one thousand seven hundred and eighty six, to *Frederick Christian*, of Holstein Augustenburg, aged twenty one.

Q. By what means did *Peter I.* surnamed the Great, distinguish himself?

A. He had the glory of being, as it were, the creator of his nation. The death of his brother *John*, his associate in the empire, leaving him, in one thousand six hundred and eighty eight, sole master of the extensive territories of Russia, he soon after formed the project of civilizing the barbarous manners that reigned there, and of introducing the sciences, arts, and manners of more polished nations.

Q. What measures did he take to compass this great design?

A. He travelled through the principal states of Europe, acquired a knowledge of every thing, brought into his empire persons capable of forming his subjects, and in a short time raised it to that high point of splendor and of power it still retains. He died in the year one thousand seven hundred and twenty five.

Q. Who were the successors of this great prince?

A. By his last will his consort, the empress *Catharine*, who died Anno Domini one thousand seven hundred and twenty seven, succeeded him. She declared *Peter Alexiowitz*, grandson of *Peter I.* the last of the race of *Czars*, her successor, but he died at the age of fourteen. After the death of this prince, *Ann*, Duchess of Courland, eldest daughter of the Czar *John*, was called to the throne. As she had no children, she nominated for her successor Prince *John*, the son of her niece *Catharine*, daughter of the Duke of Mecklenburgh, married to Prince *Antonis Ulric*, of Brunswick. This young Emperor was only two months old when he was crowned. He was dethroned a year after, and imprisoned, as were also his parents. The young prince was brought up separately, and at length cruelly murdered in one thousand seven hundred and sixty four, at Schlusselfourg.

Q. Who dethroned this unfortunate young Emperor?

A. *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Peter I.* who attended the

throne on the night between the fifth and sixth of December, one thousand seven hundred and forty one, and died after a reign of twenty years, January fifth, one thousand seven hundred and sixty two. She had nominated the son of her sister *Ann Petrowna*, married to Duke *Charles Frederick*, of Holstein Gottorp, her successor, and he succeeded her under the title of *Peter III*. This prince had scarcely ascended the imperial throne, when a revolution precipitated him from it, and conducted him prematurely to the grave, in July, one thousand seven hundred and sixty two. After his death Russia obeyed *Catharine Alexiewna*, his consort, born Princess of Anhalt Zerbst. Her reign is celebrated by a number of institutions very beneficial to Russia; by the war which she sustained against the Turks, and by the glorious peace, which was the consequence, concluded July tenth, one thousand seven hundred and seventy four, and ratified anew April eighteenth, one thousand seven hundred and seventy nine. *Catherine II*. died in the year one thousand seven hundred and ninety six, after a reign of thirty six years; and was succeeded by her son, *Paul I*. Happy had not her great qualities been sullied by crimes which must ever remain an indelible stain on her memory; for while we are dazzled by the splendor of her conquests, and admire the wisdom of her legislation, can we forget the murder of *Peter III*, the assassination of the unfortunate *Iwan*, or the dismemberment of Poland, in which she had so large a share!

Q. Who filled the throne of Poland at this time?

A. *Stanislaus Augustus Piasz*, of the ancient house of the Counts Poniatowsky. He succeeded *Augustus III*. King of Poland and Elector of Saxony, who died one thousand seven hundred and sixty four. This house possessed the crown of Poland more than fifty years.

Q. Can you give some account of the conduct of Russia, Prussia, &c. towards Poland?

A. The late Empress of Russia, the King of Prussia, and the Emperor of Germany, having entered into an alliance to dismember Poland, in the year one thousand seven hundred and seventy two, availing themselves of the civil disorders which unhappily reigned in this devoted

country, at a time of profound peace, entered it with two powerful armies, and set up their respective claims to several extensive provinces. To preserve at least an appearance of justice, they convoked the Diet, who, surrounded by an armed force, were constrained to accede to the partition, though strongly opposed by *Stanislaus Augustus*. In one thousand seven hundred and ninety one, disputes arising among the Poles, concerning some change in their constitution, the three allied powers again took advantage of the reigning disorders, to effect the complete division of the kingdom. *Stanislaus*, a melancholy witness of this fatal dismemberment, which he had not power to prevent, to spare an effusion of blood, abdicated the throne, by an act signed in one thousand seven hundred and ninety three; a step which gave great umbrage to many zealous Poles, who took up arms, under the conduct of the brave *Kosciusko*, performed prodigies of valour, and gained several victories; but their efforts were ineffectual, the numerous armies, and superior discipline of their enemies prevailed, and the allied powers, by an act signed at Petersburg, one thousand seven hundred and ninety five, guaranteed to each other the limits that were to bound their respective possessions. The court of Petersburg settled a pension of two hundred thousand ducats on the unfortunate *Stanislaus*, with the restoration of his patrimonial inheritance. He was invited to Petersburg by the late Emperor of Russia, where he died, one thousand seven hundred and ninety eight.

Q. When was the dutchy of Prussia changed into a Kingdom?

A. In one thousand seven hundred and one. *Frederick I** was proclaimed King of Prussia, at Koningsburg, January fifteenth, of that year.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Till one thousand seven hundred and thirteen. He left the kingdom to his son, *Frederick William*.

Q. What have you to observe of this Monarch?

A. He considerably increased the strength and power

* This Prince was the second Elector of Brandenburg, of that name, though the first King of Prussia.

of his dominions, and formed one of the best disciplined armies that had ever been seen. This his successor rendered three times more numerous, disciplined, and brought to the highest possible degree of perfection. It was considered by all Europe as a model in the profession of arms.

Q. When did his life and reign terminate ?

A. May thirty first, one thousand seven hundred and forty.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Frederick II.* or according to others, the *III.* This prince became very formidable to the house of Austria by the acquisition of many battles ; and distinguished himself equally by his understanding, his love of justice, and by the glory of his arms.

Q. How many wars did he sustain against the house of Austria ?

A. Three ; the first began in one thousand seven hundred and forty, to support the claims which his house had to part of the dutchy of Silesia ; this was terminated by the peace of Breslau, one thousand seven hundred and forty two, when the greater part of Silesia was ceded to him and his heirs for ever. The second began in one thousand seven hundred and forty five, and was concluded by the peace of Dresden, in one thousand seven hundred and forty eight. The last and most glorious, which he sustained nearly seven years against the most powerful forces of Europe, was terminated by the peace of Hubertsburg, February fifteenth, one thousand seven hundred and sixty three, when the treaties of Breslau and Dresden, were confirmed. In this war the army of the allies amounted to four hundred thousand men, and the Prussian only to eighty thousand.

Q. Was not the harmony established between these two houses interrupted after the peace of Hubertsburg ?

A. Yes ; by the death of *Maximilian Joseph*, the last Elector of Bavaria, of the line of *Wilhelmina*. Difficulties arose with respect to the succession, but the love of justice and humanity engaged the Empress *Maria Theresa*, and the King of Prussia, by a congress held at Teschen, to reestablish the peace, signed May thirteenth, one thousand seven hundred and seventy nine, where every thing was

arranged to the satisfaction of all the parties interested, and the treaties of Breslau, Dresden, and Hubertsburg, again ratified and guaranteed by Russia and France.

Q. Was not this treaty made void by the congress of Teschen ?

A. It was thought to be entirely settled ; but the house of Austria, it is said, endeavoured underhand to make the acquisition of Bavaria, by an exchange for the ten provinces of the Netherlands ; but this design was opposed in Germany by a formidable confederacy which was signed at Berlin, July twenty third, one thousand seven hundred and eighty five, between the King of Prussia, the King of England, as Elector of Hanover, the Elector of Saxony, the Elector of Mayence, the Duke of Deux Ponts, the Duke of Brunswick, the Landgrave of Hesse Castle, the Dukes of Saxe Gotha and Saxe Weymer, the Bishops of Wutzburg and Bamberg, the Abbe of Flude, &c. to maintain the liberties and privileges of the German Empire. It is affirmed, that a similar confederacy would also have been set on foot in Italy, headed by the King of Sardinia.

Q. When did *Frederick III.* die ?

A. August seventeenth, one thousand seven hundred and eighty six, after a reign of forty six years. He left his kingdom to his nephew, *Frederick William I.* who made many wise regulations for the good of his subjects, and died in December, one thousand seven hundred and ninety seven. He was succeeded by the present sovereign, *Frederick William III.* his son by *Louisa* of Hesse Darmstadt, his second wife.

Q. What other event in this century merits a place in universal history ?

A. In one thousand seven hundred and seventy five, a war broke out between Great Britain and her American colonies, in consequence of certain oppressive measures of the former ; which terminated in one thousand seven hundred and eighty three, in favour of the latter.

Q. Did the Colonies become independent in consequence of this rupture with the mother country ?

A. Yes ; on the fourth of July, one thousand seven hundred and seventy six, the Congress declared the thir-

teen Colonies free and independent States ; and eventually they were so acknowledged by Great Britain and the other powers.

Q. Who commanded the American armies during this war ?

A. *George Washington*, a native of Virginia ; who proved himself to be one of the most skilful generals the world ever produced. He, with his copatriots in the field and the cabinet, endured indescribable hardships suffered many defeats, till, with undiminished zeal in the cause of liberty, they finally triumphed.

Q. Did any foreign nation assist the Americans in this struggle for their liberties ?

A. As their cause was just, they had many friends in Europe ; the French particularly afforded them much assistance, both by sea and land.

Q. What is the form of the government of the United States of America ?

A. Republican. Their constitution was adopted in convention of the several states, in one thousand seven hundred and eighty nine. General *Washington* was unanimously elected the first president ; and four years after, was reelected with equal unanimity. He declined a third election. This great and good man died December fourteenth, one thousand seven hundred and ninety nine, aged sixty eight years. The whole nation voluntarily went into mourning for their irreparable loss. Perhaps no nation were ever more indebted to any one man, than the Americans were to this hero ; and no doubt history will do justice to his merits. He was succeeded in the presidency by *John Adams*, another patriot, who had done eminent services for his country, and who was vice president during the whole time of *Washington's* administration.

Q. What other great events occurred in the eighteenth century ?

A. In one thousand seven hundred and eighty nine, a revolution commenced in France, which involved in its consequences events of the greatest magnitude.

Q. Will you give a short sketch of this revolution ?

A. " For one hundred and seventy years before the

revolution, history affords no instance of a country, in which despotism was reduced to so complete a system as in France. The King levied taxes, by his sole authority, to a greater amount, than are raised by the whole of those immense territories which compose the Germanic body." To relieve the nation from the insupportable burden of its debt, an assembly was called, which soon began the work of revolution. They curtailed the authority of the King, destroyed the orders of nobility, confiscated the estates of the clergy, and granted a free toleration of religion.

Q. Was the King an idle spectator of these proceedings?

A. No; he affected to comply with the will of the people, till he found means to escape, when he declared all his past compliance involuntary and not binding. He was taken, tried by the national assembly, and by a majority of five out of upwards of seven hundred, condemned to death. He was beheaded on the twenty first of January, one thousand seven hundred and ninety three. His queen, who was accused of having been the greatest cause of the nation's distress, shared the same fate, about ten months afterwards. On the fourth of September, one thousand seven hundred and ninety two, royalty was abolished, and republicanism adopted.

Q. Did not so great a revolution cause much disorder among the people?

A. Yes; the greatest. At first, it was attended with but little bloodshed; but eventually, numerous scenes of the most horrid cruelty took place.

Q. Was the nation involved in external, as well as internal wars?

A. Yes, almost all Europe was combined against France; and nothing but enthusiastic zeal for liberty could have saved her from ruin. Her armies, commanded by the bravest generals, performed unexampled feats of valour. They overran Italy, Switzerland, Holland, &c. and she even sent a large force into Egypt. In the autumn of one thousand seven hundred and ninety nine, General *Bonaparte*, who commanded the army in Egypt, and whose success in arms was unrivalled, abruptly quit-
ted his station, and returned to France, where, soon after,

on the eighth of November, a revolution took place, which put him at the head of the government, under the title of first Consul. Soon after he assumed the command, he made overtures for peace, which were rejected by the combined powers. The eighteenth century, however, left no power in contest with *Bonaparte*, but Great Britain. A general peace did not take place till the commencement of the nineteenth century, which is beyond the limits of the present edition of this work.

AN
ABRIDGED CHRONOLOGY
OF THE MOST REMARKABLE
DISCOVERIES AND INVENTIONS,
RELATIVE TO THE
ARTS AND SCIENCES,
WITH THEIR ORIGIN, &c.

THE first and most important of all the arts and sciences is undoubtedly *agriculture*. It is perhaps for this reason that the ancients have assigned it a divine origin. They affirm that *Osirus* or *Bacchus*, the son of *Jupiter*, taught it to the Egyptians. He was the first, according to them, who planted the vine, and invented the brewing of barley into beer, in favour of those nations, whose soil was not proper for the cultivation of the vine. He lived in the time of Noah. Before Christ, 2300

The art of *sculpture* is of the remotest antiquity. The Egyptians and the Greeks contend for the honor of the invention. As the latter had a lively imagination, they ascribed it to *love*. A potter of Scyrcion had a daughter, say they, who, on the point of being for a time separated from her lover, drew his profile by tracing on a wall the shadow produced by a lamp. The father, on viewing the performance of his daughter, was struck with the thought of applying clay to the outline; this he did, and moulded an exact copy, which he put to bake in his kiln, and thus acquired the honor of being the inventor of sculpture. He is said to have lived in the time of Abraham, 2000

Orpheus, the son of *Æger*, of Thrace, or of *Apollo*, and the muse *Calliope*, is considered as the inventor of music. It is said that the notes of his lyre were so harmonious, that they animated rocks, trees, and flowers;

tamed the beasts of the forest, and softened even the infernal divinities.

The Egyptians arrogate to themselves the invention of the art of writing, and tell us that their *Hermes* or *Mercury* invented the characters. From them it passed to the Phœnetians, and from them to the Greeks. It is thought that the first book was written in the time of Job.

1500

Dædalus was the first statuary and architect known in Greece.

1200

Homer was an ancient Greek poet, whose works have been preserved to the present time. Temples and statues were erected to him after his death, though during his life he was destitute of a house to lodge in

950

Phidon, one of the descendants of *Hercules*, introduced weights and measures, and caused money to be coined in Greece, towards

900

Lycurgus gave laws to Lacedæmon, his native country, about the same time. The invention of sculpture in marble, about

770

Archilocus, a Greek poet, has passed for the inventor of Iambic Verse; he lived towards the same time.

Thales was the first who distinguished himself by astronomical discoveries: he predicted eclipses; fixed the solstitial points, and found the proportion of the sun's diameter to the circle he describes round the earth. He was born at Miletus about the year

640

Sappho, a celebrated Greek poetess, excelled in lyric poetry. Of her productions two short pieces are all that remain. She lived

600

Anacreon, a celebrated poet, flourished some time after. A few fragments of his works are still extant.

Solon gave laws to the Athenians, his fellow citizens, towards the same time. He was also a poet, and has left us some precepts in verse, and some epigrams. It is thought that the celebrated *Æsop*, author of the Fables, was cotemporary with *Solon*.

Confucius, a celebrated philosopher, taught his morals to the Chinese, towards

550

Anaximander, a disciple of *Thales*, first asserted that the moon borrows her light from the sun, which he believ-

ed to be a mass of fire, and that she is much larger than the earth. He constructed spheres, made sun dials, laid down geographical maps, and was acquainted with the obliquity of the ecliptic. He was born at Miletus, about 550

Pythagoras taught, about or near the same time, that the planets revolve round the sun; that the earth performs the same revolution; and that, besides this periodical motion, it has another rotation on its axis, which ought to be considered as the cause of the daily motion of the sun and stars, which in consequence is but apparent. He made observations, by which the year was divided into 365 days and some hours. Besides this, he rectified the prevailing errors in philosophy, geometry, music, &c. * 530

Eschylus, the first tragic poet, reformed the theatre at Athens, about 530

Sophocles and *Euripides*, some time after, corrected the errors of *Eschylus*, and made improvements in the Greek theatre.

Socrates taught his moral philosophy to the Athenians, with the view, as he himself said, of being useful to all. He was calumniated and put to death 470

Aristophanes, the most ancient comic author known. Of fifty dramatic pieces which he composed, eleven only are extant. He was a cotemporary of *Socrates*.

Phidias carried the art of sculpture to the highest degree of perfection. He flourished towards 450

Meton, a celebrated Athenian astronomer, published his lunar cycle, by which he pretended to add the course of the sun to that of the moon.* He lived about 450

Aristotle made observations on the course of a comet which appeared in his time. He also observed that the planet Mars was eclipsed by the moon, a phenomenon which has never occurred since. We are indebted to this learned man for many other discoveries. A small part of

* He maintained that the solar and lunar years could regularly begin from the same point in the heavens. This is called by modern astronomers the Golden Numbers.

his works are handed down to us. He was born at Stagyræ in the year 384

Eudoxus of Cnidus limited the solar year to 365 days and six hours. He also determined the precise time in which the other planets must revolve round the sun. 370

Hippocrates was the most ancient physician whose writings have been preserved. It is conjectured that he understood the circulation of the blood. He was a native of the Isle of Cos. 350

Euclid was one of the greatest mathematicians of antiquity. His geometrical propositions have in part reached us, and are still considered as the best of the kind. About 300

Sundials were introduced at Rome about the year 209. Before this time it was not known in that city when it was noon, but by means of a public crier, who announced it to the people.

Archimedes of Syracuse was the inventor of a glass sphere, which exactly represented the motions of all the heavenly bodies. He also invented the pumping screw, still called the *Screw of Archimedes*, which cannot be dispensed with in architecture, and by means of which he rendered Egypt habitable. He also invented burning glasses, and made use of them in defence of his country. He contrived several other astonishing machines, which have not reached us. He was killed by a Roman soldier at the taking of Syracuse, as he was engaged in solving a problem. 208

Eratosthenes, a cotemporary of Archimedes, ascertained the distance of the earth from the sun, and measured the circumference of the earth.

Archagatus was the first foreign physician who settled at Rome. He was furnished with a shop at the public expense, and had first the surname given him of the *Healer of Wounds*; but this was afterwards changed to that of the *Executioner*, on account of the violent methods he employed to effect his cures. 200

Comedy was introduced at Rome, and *Plautus*, a comic poet, distinguished himself in this kind of writing. Twenty one of his pieces are extant. He died 184

Hipparchus, the most celebrated astronomer of antiquity, composed his astronomical works. He was the first after *Thales* and *Gallus* who discovered the exact time of eclipses, and made a calculation of all that could happen of the sun and moon for six hundred years. He was the first who undertook to number the stars, and who marked their situation and magnitude. He observed further, that the stars had a motion from West to East round the poles of the ecliptic. He was born at Nice, and flourished towards 140

Praxiteles made the first silver mirrors, towards 70

Pisidonius was the inventor of an artificial sphere, which showed all the nocturnal and diurnal motions of the sun, moon, and five other planets. He lived in the year 60

Arctaus, a famous physician of his time, was the first who employed cantharides for blisters.

After the birth of Christ, 60

Claudius Ptolemy, a native of Pelusium, invented a system of astronomy, which, though it could not be supported upon any solid grounds, was adopted by all the philosophers and astronomers who succeeded him till *Copernicus*. He arranged the most considerable stars under forty eight constellations, of which twelve are round the ecliptic, twenty one in the Northern, and fifteen in the Southern hemisphere. He flourished at Alexandria about 258

Osian, an ancient British poet, whose works are handed down to us. 250

Clocks were invented in Italy near Rome towards 400. Before this time the performance of divine service was announced by striking on certain boards, which were on this account called *sacred*. The usage was introduced in France in 550, at Constantinople in 871, and into Switzerland 1030, &c.

The eggs of the silk worm were first brought from Asia into Europe, about 527

Water mills were invented in the year 555, and wind mills 744 years later.

The invention of *Bills of Exchange* originated with the Jews at the time they were exiled from France by

King *Dagobert*. It was the method they devised to draw their possessions out of the hands of their persecutors. 640

The first *Organ* was sent from Constantinople into France by *Constantine Copronymus*, as a present to King *Pepin*. 757

The Arabs apply to the study of the sciences which flourish among them. Caliph *Amamoun* distinguished himself by his astronomical observations, towards 850

Guy Arreno invented the notes of music. He first thought of marking the sounds by points on different lines, and invented the cliffs, the gamut, and the six syllables, *ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la*, which are the first of the hymn *Ut, queant, laxis, &c.* 1025. In 1330 *John de Meurs*, a Parisian, substituted for the points the notes we now use; and in the last century, the seventh syllable, *fi*, was added to the others by one *Le Maître*.

The invention of the game of chess and tric trac is 1110

The art of making paper originates with the Egyptians; they employed for this purpose the plant called *Papyrus*, from which it derives its name. Some works written upon this paper are still preserved; among others a collection of *St. Augustine's* letters. Towards the eighth or ninth century, paper began to be fabricated in Asia of pounded cotton, which diminished the use of the Egyptian paper. At length, towards the thirteenth century, the Europeans discovered the art of making paper of various qualities and colours, of cotton and linen rags. 1200

An English minor, who had left his country in disgust, and retired into Germany, established the first tin mines there. 1266

Alexander Spina, a Spanish monk, is acknowledged for the inventor of spectacles towards the year 1285

To *Roger Bacon*, a learned monk of the Franciscan order, we owe the invention of the camera obscura. He gave also in his time a description of different sorts of mirrors. Some make him the inventor of spectacles and of gunpowder. He was born at Ilchester in the year 1216, and died 1297

John Givra, or *Guya*, born at Melphey in the kingdom of Naples, is celebrated for having constructed the first *mariner's compass*, towards 1300 ; he ornamented the point of the needle with a *fleur de lis*, which was the arms of the Duke of Anjou, then King of Naples. It is from this invention that the navigation of the moderns is so greatly superior to that of the ancients.

The invention of gunpowder is prior to the monk *Berthold Schwartz*, who, according to tradition, accidentally made the discovery in 1330. It was employed in the twelfth century in the mines of Ramelsberg, near Goslar. *Henry*, count Palatine of the Rhine, son of *Henry the Lion*, made it in 1200 to blow up the walls of a castle near Treves. The use that has been made of it in battle is not more remote than the thirteenth or fourteenth century.

Playing cards were invented in France, as it is said, by a painter, named *Jacquemin Grigonneur*, towards the year 1388 ; but they were known in Germany prior to that time.

The Venetians were the first in Europe who blew glass for mirrors. In the thirteenth century they were the only people who were possessed of the secret ; but towards the fifteenth century looking glasses were fabricated by other nations, and began to be generally used.

The invention of *Painting in Oil*, which is generally attributed to *John Van Eyk*, born at Maseyk in 1410, is much more ancient ; it was known in the thirteenth century. At Bohemia, in the castle of Carlsien, the front of an altar was found painted in oil on a gilt ground by *Mutina* in 1297. It is now to be seen in the gallery at Vienna, where similar productions are likewise shewn, by *Nicholas Wurmser* of Strasburg, and by *Theodoric* of Prague, of the fourteenth century.

William Boekel, a Dutch fisherman, invented the art of curing herrings, a branch of commerce which has proved very advantageous to his country. 1416

Engraving on Wood preceded the invention of printing with moveable types. *M. de Heine* discovered, in the *Chartreuse* of Buxheim, one of the most ancient convents

of Germany, a leaf engraved in wood, representing a St. Christopher, with the date of 1423

The art of Printing with moveable types was invented in 1436 by *John Gutenberg* at Mayence. The first proofs were done at Straßburg, and afterwards perfected at Mayence in 1440. The Dutch and Germans have to this day contended for the honor of the invention.

Engraving with a Graver is nearly of the same date. It was invented by *Israel Van Meckeln* at Bockholt, in the Bishoprick of Munster, 1450

The origin of coaches is not more remote than the fifteenth century; the first seen at Paris was that which *Ladislas*, King of Hungary and of Bohemia, sent to the Queen of France, consort of *Charles VII.* towards that time.

John Muller, better known by the name of *Regiomontanus*, born at *Konigsberg*, a little city of Franconia, is the first who, after the revival of the belles-lettres, applied himself to the making of astronomical observations. He introduced the use of tangents in trigonometry, and was the first who added the course of the sun, moon, and planets to the almanack, which, before his time, contained only church festivals and the names of the saints. He was also the inventor of decimal arithmetic. He died at Rome in the year 1476

The most ancient book, with cuts in wood, is that of *Vita Christi*, printed at Augsbourg in 1476

The first *Pawnbroker's*, or *Mount of Piety*, as it was then called, was established at Perouse by some charitable citizens for the relief of the distressed. It was imitated by Pope *Sextus IV.* who instituted one at Savona; and similar establishments are now common throughout Europe. 1479

Bartholomew Diaz, a Portuguese, first discovered the Cape of Good Hope. 1486

Christopher Columbus, a Genoese, is usually considered as having discovered the fourth quarter of our globe in 1492. The family of *Borkeim*, at Nuremburg, however, dispute the honor with him, and pretend that the discovery was made by one of their ancestors, named *Martin Borkeim*. They support their assertion on the testimony of

Plagabetta, a Spanish author who was cotemporary. Ungrateful posterity has named the discovered country after *Americus Vespucius*, a Florentine, and has alluded neither to *Boeheim* nor *Columbus*.

Vasco de Gama, a Portuguese, is the first who doubled the Cape of Good Hope : he landed in the East Indies in 1497

The first pocket watches, with springs, were made by *Peter Hele*, at Nuremberg, in 1500 ; they were called *Nuremberg Eggs*, on account of their form, which was oval. Seventy years after, they were first brought into England.

Peter of Navarre, a Spanish general, invented mines for the attack and defence of towns in 1503

The first who made and published a collection of ancient inscriptions is *Conrad Peutinger*, of Augsbürg, towards the same time.

Sebastian Munster, born at Ingelheim in the Palatinate, at the beginning of the sixteenth century reestablished the use of sun-dials. 1510

Etching is an invention of the celebrated *Albert Durer*, who died in 1526 His portrait of St. Jerome, engraved in this manner, was done in 1512

The *Tobacco plant*, which the Spaniards found in Yucatan in 1520, was not introduced into Europe till some years after. Sir *Walter Raleigh* was the first, who, on his return from Virginia, introduced the practice of smoking tobacco into England ; and some young Englishmen, who went to pursue their studies at Leyden, taught it afterwards to the Dutch.

Magellan is the first who, in the year 1519, sailed round the world in the space of 1124 days. Fifty eight years after, Sir *Francis Drake* did the same in 1056 days ; and twenty years after him, *Thomas Cavendish* made the same voyage in 777 days. In our days the celebrated Captain *Cook* and others have performed it in less time.

The custom of wearing powder in the hair is not more remote than the middle of the sixteenth century. Before that time it was confined to the comedians, who only used it when at the theatre, and took great care to comb it out before they left it. 1540

Nicholas Copernicus, a native of Thorn in Prussia, and a canon of Worms, is the father of astronomy among the moderns, and the author of a system of the world, which, by the observations and experience of more than two centuries, has been found true. He died in 1543

The first pins made of brass wire were fabricated in 1543. The ladies before that time made use of wooden skewers.

The machine now used for stamping money was invented in Germany towards 1559, but did not appear in France till seventy years after.

The anatomy of the human frame was not generally practised in Europe till the sixteenth century. *James Carpenfis*, or *Barenger de Carpi*, and *Andrew Vassell*, of Brussels, greatly contributed to its establishment. The science of anatomy was almost unknown among the ancients, and was considered as a sacrilege, even in the time of *Charles V.* who caused the theologians of Salamanca to be consulted, whether, with a safe conscience, a human body might be dissected, in order to discover the construction. 1550

Stamped paper is a Spanish invention, and was some time after introduced into the Netherlands towards 1555

Siberia, though a part of the Continent, was not discovered till the middle of the sixteenth century, in the reign of the Czar *Ivan Basilides* by one *Anika*, who lived in the environs of Archangel towards the year 1560

Leonard Fuchs, Professor at Tubingen, renewed the study of botany in Europe. He died in 1565

John Kepler, astronomer to the Emperor *Rodolphus*, may be regarded with reason as the restorer of modern astronomy. It was he who first gave the true theory of vision, as well as of the flux and reflux of the sea. He thought of ellipsis for the orbits of the celestial bodies, and accounted for the motion of the universe by the law of gravity, which Sir *Isaac Newton* demonstrated after him. He was born at Wall in Suabia the 22d of December, 1571. It was *Kepler* also who invented the astronomical tube with two convex glasses, and observed the sexangular form of the flakes of snow always corresponding to the angle of 60 or 120 degrees.

Louis de Berquin, a Brabanton gentleman, born at Bruges, first introduced the practice of cutting diamonds, towards the end of the sixteenth century. Having experienced that two diamonds, rubbed together pretty hardly, begin to act upon each other, the idea struck him of forming by this means regular facets. He then thought of iron wheels to give the diamonds an entire polish, by means of the powder that fell from them. 1543

Potatoes derive their origin from America. The renowned Sir *Francis Drake* brought them first into England in the year 1586; but the Germans were unacquainted with them till 1650. They were first cultivated in Voigtland; but were not known in Holland till the beginning of the eighteenth century.

Francis Viète was the first who employed letters in algebraical calculations. 1590.

The *Opus Mallei*, or method of engraving upon copper by means of a pointed hammer, with which the strong or faint touches are struck according as the shadow requires strength. The first proofs are those of one *Paul Flynt*, in the year 1592.

The measuring compass was invented in the beginning of the seventeenth century by *Jost Byng*, mathematician to the Langrave of Hesse Cassel. The first description of it was found in a Treatise on Mechanical Instruments of *Lewis Hulsus*. 1603.

The *Rule of Proportion* was invented about fifteen years after, by *B. Bramer*, an architect at Marburg.

The telescope, with a concave eye glass and a convex object glass, was invented by *John Lipperheim*, a German; and, according to others, by *James Metius*, a native of Holand.

Simon Mayer, astronomer and mathematician to the Margrave of Anspach, was the first who discovered the four satellities of Jupiter in the month of November, 1609. *Galileo* did not perceive them till the January of the following year. 1610.

Christopher Scheitler, a Jesuit, was the first who observed the spots of the sun in the month of May, 1611. He was the same who added to the telescope with a

concave and convex lens, a third glass to rectify the objects.

Nicholas Briot, a Frenchman, was the inventor of the coining balance. He presented it to the mint at Paris, with the press, cutter, and flattening engine. His invention was not at that time, 1617, approved by his country, which obliged him to carry his machine to England, where he was well received and rewarded. Thirty years after, the machine was substituted in France for the hammer, which had been before used.

John, Baron de *Neper*, who died in Scotland, his native country, in 1618, invented the logarithms.

The French and English contend for the invention of embossed papers. The French attribute it to one *Francois*, by profession a sheath maker, who invented it towards 1620

The invention of perukes belongs to the French; the first was made at Paris in 1620

The art of printing off engravings in different colours was thought of by one *Loftman*, and brought to perfection by *Christopher le Blond*, a native of Frankfort on the Main, 1626

Cornelle Drebbel, a peasant of North Holland, invented the double reflecting microscope. He is the same who invented the thermometer in the year 1627

William Harvey, an English physician, discovered the circulation of the blood towards 1628

Theophrastus Renaudot, a physician, invented newspapers: he published the first at Paris in 1631

The Spaniards brought the *Quinquina*, or bark, from Peru into Europe towards the year 1640. The Jesuits at first gave in their name, and set a high price on it. The English first learnt the art of properly preparing it, and the court of Spain bought a particular preparation of it from Sir *W. Talbot*.

Posts were first established in Germany by *Lamoral de Taxis* towards 1641

Galileo, celebrated for the invention of the telescope, and still more for the misfortune in which it involved him, discovered the four satellites of Jupiter, and the spots in the sun. He was born at Florence in 1564, and died in 1642

Torricelli, physician to the great Duke of Tuscany, invented the tubes called after him *Torricellian tubes*, towards the year 1648

The first coffee came into Europe by *Marseilles* in 1644

Sir Kenelm Digby, a native of Ireland, was the first who made known the *sympathetic powder* for the stoppage of hemorrhages. He bought the preparation of the vi-
triol of a monk at Rome. 1646

John Hevelius a Burgomaster at Dantzick, made the first selenographical maps. 1647

The method of engraving called *black*, was the invention of a Lieutenant Colonel of Hesse, named *De Siegen*, 1648

The Dutch first initiated the English into the Chinese taste of drinking *tea*. The first tea was brought into Europe in the year 1652

Athanasius Kircher, a Jesuit, was the inventor of the speaking trumpet: he is said to be the author of the camera obscura which is attributed to Roger Bacon. 1652

Otto Guericke, Burgomaster at Magdeburg, was the inventor of the *air pump*, by means of which he exhibited very curious phenomena before the Diet of Ratisbon; he gave also the first idea of electricity by means of balls of sulphur, which he employed to make his experiments. He also was the first who thought of employing the *Torricellian tubes* for observing the weight of the air and the variations in the weather which are the result. 1650

The art of weaving stockings was invented in England, whence it passed into France: the first stocking manufactory was established by *John Hindred* in 1650

Christian Hagens, born at the Hague, April 14, 1629 was the first who discovered the four satellites of Saturn in 1655. We are indebted to him also for the invention of clocks with pendulums in 1657; and the same year for the discovery of Saturn's ring. He also invented the microscope with a single lens. 1650

The *zodiacal light* was first discovered in England by *Dr. Childers* in 1650

The transfusion of the blood of one animal into another was thought of by *Sir Christopher Wren*, professor of

Oxford. He proposed the method to the celebrated Sir Thomas Boyle in 1659

The uniform dress of military men was first introduced among the French troops under the reign of *Louis XIV.* about 1660

Grimaldi, a Jesuit, gave to the spots in the moon the denomination which is still in use among astronomers, in preference to that which *Hevelius* had given them some years previous. 1660

The *Royal Society* of London was established in 1660 by *Charles II.* The *Royal Academy* of the Sciences at Paris was established in 1672 by *Louis XIV.*

Gater, a peasant of Nuremberg, was the inventor of the air gun, about 1662

The author of the first "Journal des Savants" was named *Houdeville*: he published the first volume of this periodical work 1665

Olaus Rømer, born at Arhus in Denmark the 25th of September, 1644, was the first who perceived that light had a progressive motion. He calculated that it traversed a space of four millions of leagues in one minute. 1670

Francis Richer, a native of France, was the first who discovered that bodies have less gravity under the Equator than in other parts of the earth; that a pound weight at Paris is less than a pound at Cayenne; that a pendulum which beats the seconds at Paris must be shortened to do the same at Cayenne. This discovery was made in 1672

Ricard accidentally discovered the phenomenon of the phosphoric *luminous*; and some time after *Bernoulli* brought it to perfection.

For the *Hermetic phosphorus* we are indebted to *G. A. Baldern*, bailiff at Haynichen in Saxony.

Brand, a German chymist, invented the artificial burning phosphorus towards the same time.

Barlow made the first repeating watches and pendulums in England in the year 1676

Simon Pauli, of Rostock, discovered the secret of bleaching the bones used for skeletons towards this time.

Frederick Ruysch made the first anatomical injections into the viscera.

The Abbe *Gastano Guillo Zombo*, a Sicilian, is the inventor of anatomies in wax.

Baron de *Tschirnhausen*, born at Liffingwell in Lusatia, the 14th of April, 1651, was the inventor of *burning glasses*, and large concave mirrors, which were not unknown to *Archimedes*. He made them public in 1680

George Samuel Doersal, a Lutheran pastor at Plauten in Voigtland, was the first who demonstrated the parabolical orbit of the comets, in a Treatise published in the year 1680

J. D. Cassini, in observing the planet Venus in the year 1672 and 1682, observed near its body a luminous speck, which he took for its satellite. In 1740 *Schrot* observed the same phenomenon at London at different times. In 1761 *Montaigne* saw this satellite at Montpelier more distinctly. *Roedkier* at Copenhagen discerned it again the 3d, 10th, and 11th of March, 1764. Notwithstanding all these observations, the celebrated astronomer, *Hell*, considers it only as an optical delusion.

Christian Leibnitz, born at Leipzig the 28d of June, 1646, invented differential calculation, and gave a description of it in 1684

Sir *Isaac Newton* discovered it about the same time : besides which we are indebted to him for the theory of light and colours, the developement of the laws of gravity, for the invention or improvement of the reflecting telescope, and for several other important discoveries in astronomy, &c. He was born the 25th of December, 1642, and died at London the 20th of March 1727

The first landscapes in pastel were drawn by *Alexis Thiel*, an artist born at Erfurt, and afterwards settled at Dresden in 1685

The art of making false pearls of a silvery matter, extracted from the scales of a little fish called *bleak*, was discovered by a Frenchman named *Jannin*. 1686

Papin invented the digester, a vessel which is made use of by chymists to soften bones, which it will do in the space of a few seconds. He gave the description in 1688

The large flat bottomed boats which are employed to tow the largest ships over the sand bank called *Pampus*, on leaving the port of Amsterdam or elsewhere, were in-

vented by *Mieues Meindertz Backer*, a citizen of Amsterdam, who had a pension granted him for life by the admiralty 1690

Francis Thevart, a native of France, invented the *casting* or *running* large looking glass plates, by means of which mirrors are formed of twice the dimensions of any made in the Venetian way of blowing. He made the first towards this time.

Theonot Arbeau, a dancing master at Paris, invented a method of writing or noting down all the steps and motions of a dance, as the sounds of a song are scored in music.

Claude Briaque was the first who engraved on the diamond.

The manner of painting in water colours soaked in oil, was invented by one *Vincent* of Mont Petit.

Greil, of Nuremburg, was the inventor of the cask with two bottoms, one for water, the other for gunpowder, for the purpose of extinguishing fire.

Pfannen Schmid, a goldsmith at Quedlinburg, invented the art of refining gold by means of the cuttle fish.

Berlin blue was discovered at the beginning of this century, by one *J. C. Dippel*. For some time it remained a secret, but is now made every where.

The porcelain of Saxony was invented by an apothecary's boy, named *Boetticher*, who discovered the secret by endeavouring to find a composition to make crucibles. The first porcelain was brown; but white was made in 1709

Bartholomew Gusmao, a Jesuit, in 1729, at Lisbon, caused an aerostatic machine, in the form of a bird, to be constructed, and made it to ascend, by means of a fire lighted, in the presence of the King, Queen, and a great number of spectators. Unfortunately, in rising, it struck against a cornish, was torn, and fell to the ground. The inventor purposed renewing his experiment, but the people had announced him to the Inquisition as a forcerer, and he withdrew into Spain, where he died in an hospital.

Du Fay, of the academy at Paris, was the first who perceived the astonishing phenomenon of the *dew*, which in descending falls profusely on glass, porcelain, slate, and

burnt or rusted iron, but neither on gold, silver gilt, nor burnished nor red copper. He published the memoir of this discovery in 1736

The first *Society of Insurance* for fires, was established in the Electorate of Hanover. Those of London and Paris do not bear date till about the year 1740 ; but the true founders of these institutions were the Jews, several centuries before, at the time when the Christians held all pecuniary interest in abhorrence. How are we degenerated ! In 1523 Insurance Policies were issued at Florence.

It is about forty years since the method of converting turf into coals, was found out in Germany, and the furnaces employed for this purpose were invented in the county of Wernigrode some time after 1748

We are indebted to Dr. *James Bradley*, born at Shirborn in Gloucestershire, for the discovery of the aberration or irregular variation of the fixed stars. He gave the theory in 1727 and 1737. He also discovered the variation of the axis of the earth from the plane of the ecliptic, the period of which is nine years.

The *Solar Microscope* was invented by Doctor *Liebkühn*, at Berlin in 1740. *James Gregory* rectified Sir *Isaac Newton's* telescope.

The phenomenon of the electric shock was discovered by *Cunee* at Leyden, the beginning of the year 1749. The same experiment was previously made in Germany, in 1745, by *Kleist*. We may see, lib. ii. that *Pliny* had even then a knowledge of the electric fire.

Dr. *Benjamin Franklin*, born at Boston, New England, 1706, made great improvement in electricity, and invented lightning rods, about 1750

Artificial loadstones was an invention of an Englishman, named *Canton*, who made it public in 1752

An Englishman named *Doland*, upon a plan demonstrated by professor *Euler*, made great improvements in spectacles 1756

The composition of the perspective glass which mariners use at sea, when the weather is hazy, is attributed to the same.

A Frenchman named *Picaut*, discovered the art of

preserving old paintings, by removing them without injury from the old canvases to the new.

The famous naturalist *Linneus*, discovered the method of feeding the Pearl Oyster, so as to increase the size of the pearls. He presented a pearl of an extraordinary size to the Queen of Sweden, in 1760

The art of engraving plans, in the taste of washing, was the invention of *Barabé*, a Parisian, in 1761

Professor Gerlach, at Vienna, a short time since, invented a balance, by means of which, the force of the most impetuous wind might be estimated with the greatest nicety.

Mr. *John Harrison*, a most accurate mechanic, invented a pendulum, called a Time keeper, to ascertain the longitude when at sea. The united labour of himself and son had been bestowed on it during forty years. It was proved by the Tartar man of war, in a voyage from Portsmouth to the Isle of Barbadoes and back again; and in its passage, in every respect performed what the act of parliament required. Half of the promised premium was paid to Mr. *Harrison's* son, in 1764

Tobias Mayer, born at Ulm, in Swabia, is the author of that immortal work and *chef d'œuvre* of precision, the *Lunary Tables*, now made use of by astronomers and mariners, in their calculations of longitude. A reward of three thousand pounds was granted to his heirs by the parliament of England, in 1765

The property of the bark of the oak to tan leather was discovered in England: in Ireland a similar property for preparing it was discovered in heath 1766

The means of rendering salt water fresh, for the advantage of mariners, has been long sought. By experiments that have been repeatedly made for some years past, it appears, that if the desired end has not been wholly, it has been nearly attained. The machine which *M. Poissonnier* has invented for this purpose, has already proved very beneficial to two French frigates which have employed it. *L'Enjouie*, during a voyage of five months experienced no sickness, and the vessel in which *M. Bouganville* made a voyage round the world, in two years and a half, which the voyage continued, lost only seven men. This extraor-

inary preservation of the crew is attributed to the quantity of fresh water with which they were supplied by the machine

1769

The English parliament, in 1772, granted to Mr. *Irvin* a premium of five thousand pounds sterling, for the same invention, which is said to approach very near *M. Poissonnier's*. While we are boasting of these inventions, and even paying premiums for them, we are ignorant whether or not the effect corresponds to the end proposed.

Kleinschmidt, geometrician to the Landgrave of Hesse-Cassel, is the inventor of a very useful instrument for measuring, from one station, a piece of land of three leagues extent, and laying it down, by means of the same instrument, on paper with the greatest exactness. The construction of this instrument is so simple, that a man without any experience in land surveying is able, with little instruction, to make use of it with all the exactness requisite. This invention may be of great utility to land surveyors, engineers, to those who lay down geographical maps, &c. Instruments of this kind are now constructed after the model of the original.

1770

Mr. *F. X. Hoffmann*, a native of Bavaria, is the inventor of rules and principles, said to be incontestible, by which children may be taught to read in the space of thirty hours; and a person of riper age in less time, as he proved before commissioners appointed to judge from the examples. It is a pity, for the sake of society, that this invention is not more known.

1772

In the war between England and America, and during the last between England and France, a new sort of cannon was invented, called *Caronades*, which fired balls from 60 to 103 pounds weight; whereas, before, the most weighty were only 48 pounds; and it is affirmed that these caronades are as easy to move as cannon which fire balls of only 24 pounds.

M. de Kempler, a Hungarian, was the inventor of a machine or automaton, which played at chess with any living person, and answered all kinds of questions put to it by letters properly arranged. This ingenious invention he exhibited to the curious in different parts of Europe.

1782

M. de Vaucanson is the inventor of a newly constructed mill for the purpose of twisting silk more equally than it was done in Piedmont and other cities of Italy, before these mills were established at Aubenas; since that time France has dispensed with the use of foreign twisted silk, which has saved that country many thousands yearly. *M. de Vaucanson* has also invented a loom for the fabricating of silk stuffs, which requires the hand of a child only to work it. He died a short time since at Nuremberg. 1783

Messrs. *Stephen* and *Joseph de Montgolfier* invented or revived the invention of the *aerostatic balloon*. The first public experiment was made at Anonay, the fifth of June, 1783; and the first aerial journey was performed at Murette, near Paris, November the 21st, of the same year. The revival of this curious experiment is due to the brothers *Montgolfier*. Messrs. *Charles* and *du Rozier* contributed much towards bringing it to perfection; and *Du Rozier* and *Robert* were the first sacrifices, 15th of June, 1785. *M. Blanchard*, of Boulogne, surpassed all former adventurers. He, in company with Dr. *Jeffries*, an American, crossed the channel from England to France, in his balloon, and made many other aerial excursions.

The celebrated astronomer and philosopher *Euler* has observed that every succeeding year will be some minutes shorter than the preceeding. This fact seems to be confirmed by the most exact astronomical experiments, and appears to demonstrate that the earth, from one year to another, makes its revolution round the sun in less time. 1784

Mr. *Herschel*, the celebrated astronomer, has discovered a new planet in our solar system. It at first bore his name, but is now called, in Europe, the Georgium Sidus, in honor of his present majesty, *George III*.

Mr. *Herschel*, has also discovered 1300 nebulous stars, and has determined their situation: he is of opinion that they are fixed stars, and so many solar systems.

The same celebrated observer has also remarked on the dark side of the moon a luminous speck, which he believes to be the fire of a volcano.

Halley thinks he has observed lightning in the moon.

Bianchi affirms that he has discovered a light that passes over the spot called *plato*, and takes it for the rays of the sun falling upon a cavity on the side of the said spot.

Don Ulloa, observed a cavity which passes across the body of this satellite. Other learned men tell us that it is a frozen body, on which there are no organized beings.

From these observations it appears that we are better acquainted with our satellite and near neighbour the moon than with the other planets and fixed stars.

In 1793, *M. Chappe*, a Frenchman, constructed a Telegraph, which was the first ever applied to useful purposes, though he cannot be called the original inventor. The Greeks undoubtedly had a method of conveying intelligence immediately to a great distance. In 1668, the Marquis of Worcester asserted that he had discovered the art of holding conversation with a person, as far off as the eye could discover him; and in 1703, *M. Montan* invented a telegraph, with which he gave a specimen of his skill before several persons of rank in the court of France. It is pretty certain, however, that the Telegraph, invented by *Jonathan Groat* of Massachusetts, in 1799, and now in operation between Boston and Martha's Vineyard, is upon a plan entirely different from, and far superior to, any ever used in Europe. With this Mr. Groat has asked a question, and received an answer from a distance of 90 miles, in ten minutes. 1800

The world is indebted to Dr. *Edward Jenner*, an Englishman, for the all important discovery of inoculating with the *live pox*, in 1799. Dr. *Benjamin Waterhouse*, Medical Professor at Harvard University, introduced it into America. He made his first experiment on his son, June 8th, 1800.

EMINENT AND REMARKABLE PERSONS.

A ARON, the first high priest of the Jews, born 1570, died 1453 before Christ.

Aaron-ben-aser, a rabbi, flourished 475.

Abbadie, the Rev. James, born 1658, died 1727.

Abdalla, son of Osmar, flourished 625.

Abel, born in 3 of the world, killed by Cain 129 ditto.

Abernethy, John, the Divine, born 1680, died 1740.

Abraham entertained three Angels, 1897; offered up Isaac 1871; died 1821 before Christ, aged 175.

Abu, Bekr, died 624, aged 63.

Achilles, died 1184 before Christ.

Achmet III. Emperor of the Turks, who encouraged printing in Constantinople, died 1730.

Adam, died 3074 before Christ.

Addison, Joseph, born 1672, died June 17, 1719

Adrian, the Emperor, visited Britain, and built a strong rampart, and died 138, aged 72.

Æschylus, the poet, died 456 before Christ, aged 69.

Africanus, Julius, the historian, died 232.

Agamemnon, died about 904 before Christ.

Aglionby, John, one of the translat. of our Bible, died 1609

Agrippa, King of Judea, died 94, aged 54.

Ahab, died 897 before Christ.

Ahaz, died 726 before Christ.

Akenfide, Dr. Mark, born 1721, died June 23, 1770.

Alceus, the lyric poet, flourished 607 before Christ.

Alcibiades, the Athenian, died 404 before Christ, aged 46.

Alexander the Great, born 356; succeeded Philip 336; founded the Grecian empire 331; died at Babylon, March 21, 323 before Christ, aged 32.

Alexander III. Pope compelled the Kings of England and France to hold his stirrups, died 1181.

- Alfred the Great, Saxon King of England, lawgiver and historian, died 901, aged 52.
- Alva, Duke of, died 1582, aged 74.
- Ambrose, St. Bishop of Milan, 374, died 397.
- Americus Vespucius, discoverer of the continent of America, died 1526.
- Ames, Joseph, typographical historian, died 1759.
- Anacharsis, the Scythian philosopher, lived 554 before C.
- Anacreon, died 474 before Christ, aged 85.
- Anastasius, died 518, aged 87.
- Anaxagoras, died 428 before Christ, aged 70.
- Anderfon, Sir Edmund, a law author, died 1605.
- Anderfon, James, a commercial writer, died 1764.
- Andre, Major, hanged by the Americans for a spy, Oct. 2, 1780.
- Annibal, Carthaginian General, died 260 before Christ.
- Anthony, Mark, Roman orator, flourished 100 before C.
- Anthony, St. of Padua, died 1231.
- Antiochus, died 164 before Christ.
- Antipater, died 321 before Christ.
- Antonius Pius, Emperor of the Romans, died 161.
- Apollonius, the geometrician, lived 242 before Christ.
- Abuthnot, Dr. born 1611, died 1735.
- Archelaus, of Macedon, patron of learning, 440 before C.
- Archimedes, the mathematician, inventor of the sphere, killed at Syracuse 208 before Christ.
- Archytas, the inventor of the vice and pulley, shipwrecked 408 before Christ.
- Argyle, Marquis of, beheaded May 27, 1661.
- Arion, the musician, flourished 620 before Christ.
- Ariosto, the Italian poet, born 1474, died 1534.
- Aristides, the Grecian orator, lived 488 before Christ.
- Aristotle, died at Calcide 322 before Christ, aged 63.
- Arius, the heretic, died 336.
- Arminius, James, founder of a sect, died 1609.
- Armstrong, Dr. born 1732, died 1779.
- Arne, Dr. Thomas Augustine, died 1778.
- Arne, Michael, the musician, died 1785.
- Arrowsmith, John, mathematician, flour. in the 17th cent.
- Artaxerxes, king of Persia, died 242 before Christ.
- Ascue, Anne, burnt for heresy 1646.

Ash, Dr. author of the English grammar, &c. died aged 55, April 1775.

Athanasius, St. died 371, aged 73.

Attalus; founder of the monarchy of Pergamos, and inventor of parchment, died 193 before Christ.

Atterbury, Bishop of Rochester, committed to the Tower, Aug. 24, 1722; exiled May 27, 1723; died Feb. 22, 1731-2, aged 69.

Aubrey, John, the antiquarian born, 1626, died 1700.

Augustin, St. father of the latin Church, born 354, baptized 387, died 431.

Augustin, St. landed on the Isle of Thanet 597, made the first Archbishop of Canterbury, died 694.

Aurelian, the Roman Emperor, the first who wore a diadem, assassinated 275.

Bacon, Roger, born 1214, died 1294.

Bajazet, Sultan, conquered by Tamerlane, died 1413.

Barbarossa, the famous Corsair, died 1517, aged 48.

Barclay, Robert, the Quaker, born 1648, died 1690.

Bartholomew, St. martyred Aug. 24, 71.

Baxter, Rev. Richard, born 1615, died 1691.

Beaumont, Francis, the poet, born 1555, died 1615.

Bede, Venerable, died 735, aged 70.

Bellarmin, born in Italy; 1542, died 1621.

Belisarius deprived of all his dignities 561, died 565.

Benedict, St. founder of the Benedictines, died 546, aged 66.

Bentham, Edward, English divine, and writer of the History of Ely, Cathedral, died 1776.

Bertholdus, who discovered gunpowder, died 1340.

Bidloo, the anatomist, born 1649, died 1713.

Blackmore, Sir Richard, died 1729.

Blackstone, Judge, author of the Law Commentaries, born 1723, died Feb. 14, 1780.

Blair, Dr. died 1732.

Blake, Admiral, born 1589, died 1657.

Boadicea, Queen of the Britons, burnt London, and killed 70,000 of the inhabitants; poisoned herself, 61.

Boerhaave, Dr. died Sept. 23, 1738, aged 69.

Boetius, the historian, died about 1450.

Boileau, the French poet, born 1630, died 1712.

Bolingbroke, Lord, died 1751, aged 73.

- Bonner, Bishop of London, born 1512; deprived May 1550; died in the Marshalsea, Sept. 5, 1569.
- Boscawen, Admiral, died 1761, aged 50.
- Bossuet, Bishop of Meaux, born 1627, died 1704.
- Bougainville, thenavigat. was killed in Paris, Aug. 10 1792.
- Boyer, the lexicographer, born 1664, died 1729.
- Boyle, Richard, Earl of Cork, born 1566, died 1632.
- Boyle, Roger, inventor of the Orrery, b. 1621, died 1679.
- Boyle, Robert, the philosopher, died 1691, aged 65.
- Brahe, Tycho, born 1546, died 1601.
- Bray, Thomas, devisor of propagating the Gospel in foreign parts, born 1656, died 1730.
- Brown, R. founder of the Brownists, died 1630, aged 80.
- Bruce, Robert, Scotch Gen. and King, 1306, died 1329.
- Bruyere, died 1696, aged 56.
- Buchanan, George, born 1506, died 1582.
- Buckingham, George Villiers, Duke of, b. 1627, d. 1688.
- Bunyan, John, born 1628, died 1688.
- Burgh, James, ingenious Scotch author, died 1775.
- Burke, Edmund, died July 8, 1797, aged 68.
- Burkitt, Rev. Wm. born 1650, died 1703.
- Burnet, Bishop of Sarum, born 1643, died 1715.
- Busby, Rev. Dr. Richard, born 1606, died 1695.
- Butler, Samuel, born 1612, died 1680.
- Byram, John, inventor of short hand, born 1691; d. 1768.
- Cabot, Sebastian, died 1557, aged 70.
- Cadmus, first King of Thebes, 1094 before Christ.
- Cæsalpinus, And. the first systematic writer of botany, born 1519, died 1603.
- Cæsar, after fighting fifty pitched battles, and slaying above 1,192,000 men, was killed in the Senate House, 44 before Christ.
- Calligula, died 41, aged 29.
- Calmet, the learned Benedictine, died in France, Oct. 25, 1757, aged 86.
- Calvert, Bernard, of Andover, went from Southwark to Calais, July 17, 1720, in one day, and returned the same evening.
- Calvin, died at Geneva, May 27, 1564, aged 45.
- Cambray, Fenelon, archbishop of, died 1716, aged 64.
- Cambden, the historian, died Nov. 2, 1623, aged 72.

Candiac, John James, who knew his letters at 13 months old, and at 7 years was master of Latin, Greek, Hebrew, &c. died 1726, aged but 7.

Carew, Thomas, died 1639.

Catherine de Medicis, died 1589.

Cato killed himself, Feb. 5, 45 before Christ, aged 48.

Caverly, Sir Hugh, the first person who used guns for the service of England, died 1389.

Caxton, William, the first printer in England, 1474, died 1491, aged 70.

Cecrops, the first King of Athens, 1556 before Christ.

Celcus, a great physician, flourished 150.

Cervantes, Mich. de, born at Madrid, died 1620 aged 69.

Chambaud, Mr. Lewis, died Sept. 22, 1776.

Chambers, Ephraim, author of the Dictionary, died 1740.

Charlemagne, died 813, aged 74.

Charleton, Walter, physician, died 1707.

Charlevoix, Peter, historian, died 1761.

Charles XII. of Sweden, killed at Fredericksball, in Norway, Nov. 30, 1718, aged 36.

Chatterton, Thomas, poet, born 1752, died 1770.

Chaucer, Geof. born 1328, died 1409.

Chefelden, William, the anatomist, died 1752.

Cheyne, George, the physician, died 1748.

Chrysostron, St. made Bishop of Constantinople 308; banished 404, aged 53.

Chub, Thomas, English philosopher, died 1747.

Churchill, Rev. Charles, born 1731, died 1764.

Cibber, Mrs. the actress, died 1766, aged 57.

Cibber, Colley, born 1674, made Poet Laureat, Dec. 1730, died 1758.

Cicero, born 107, made an oration against Verres 70, his second oration against the Agrarian law, and banished April, 58, put to death 43 before Christ, aged 64.

Cincinnatus, Quinctius, made Dictator of Rome from the plough, born 456 before Christ.

Clarendon, Hyde, Earl of, born, 1612; banished Dec. 12, 1667; died Dec. 7, 1674.

Clarke, Rev. Dr. Samuel, born 1675; d. May 17, 1729.

Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt, 50, killed herself 20 before Christ, aged 41.

- Clark, John le, died 1736 aged 79.
 Clive, Lord, defeated the Nabob, June 26, 1757; created a peer, 1762; killed himself Nov. 1774, aged 49.
 Coke, Lord Chief Justice, born 1549, died 1634.
 Columbus, Christopher, died 1506.
 Confucius, the Chinese philosopher, born 515 before C.
 Congreve, William, born 1672, died 1729.
 Constantine the Great, died 337, aged 66.
 Cook, Capt. James, the navigator, killed Feb. 14, 1779.
 Copernicus, of Thorn, in Prussia, died 1543, aged 70.
 Corneille, Peter, dram. poet, died 1684, aged 78.
 Cornelius, Nepos, died about 25 before Christ.
 Cortes, Ferdinand, died 1547, aged 62.
 Cox, bishop, translator of the Bible, died 1581.
 Cranmer, Archbishop of Canterbury, introduced to Henry VIII. 1529; burnt at Oxford March 21, 1556.
 Cromwell, Oliver, made protector of England, 1649, died 1657.
 Curtius, Quintus, lived in 64.
 Cyprian, St. martyred 258.
 Cyrus died 529 before Christ.
 Dacier, Mad. born 1651, died Aug. 6, 1720.
 Dampier, Wm. the navigator, died 1699.
 Daniel, sent captive to Babylon 606, interpreted Nebuchadnezzar's dream 603; cast into the lion's den 538; predicted the Persian empire 534 before Christ.
 Darci, Count, philosopher, died 1779.
 Darius, the Mede, King of Assyria, 538 before Christ.
 Davies, Rev. Dr. John, born 1679, died 1732.
 Day, John, printer, the first introducer of the Greek and Saxon characters into England, died 1584.
 Democritus, died 361 before Christ, aged 109.
 Demosthenes, recalled from banishment 322; poisoned himself 313 before Christ, aged 60.
 Derham, Dr. Wm. born 1657, died April 1735.
 Descartes, born at Tauraine 1556, died 1650.
 Deucalian, died 1500 before Christ.
 De Wit, John, Statesman, born 1625, died 1672.
 Diodorus, Siculus, lived 45 before Christ..
 Diogenes, the cynic, died 324 before Christ, aged 89.
 Dionysius, Tyrant of Syracuse, died 368 before Christ.

- Dodd, Rev. Dr. excuted for forgery June 27, 1777.
 Doddridge Dr. died Oct. 26, 1751 aged 50.
 Doddsley, Robert, poet, died 1764, aged 61.
 Domitian, died 96 after Christ, aged 45.
 Draco flourished 624 before Christ.
 Drake, Sir Francis, set sail on his voyage round the world 1577 ; died Jan. 28, 1595, aged 50.
 Dryden, John, born 1613, died May 1, 1700.
 Eachard, Rev. Dr. John, born 1615, died 1696.
 Eachard, Rev. Lawr. the historian, born 1671, died 1730.
 Edwards, Dr. Jonathan, President of N. J. College, born 1703, died 1758.
 Eli, the eleventh Judge of Israel, broke his neck at Shiloh, 1116 before Christ, aged 98.
 Elijah, prophesied 911 ; supported by the widow of Sarepta 910 ; taken up into heaven 896 before Christ.
 Elisha, died 830, before Christ, having prophesied 60 years.
 Eliot, Sir John, the English physician, died 1787.
 Elias, Mr. W. died at Liverpool, Aug. 1780, aged 130½.
 Eneas, the Trojan Gen. died 1177 before Christ.
 Enoch, translat. into heaven 987 of the world, aged 365.
 Ephminondas, Theban Gen. slain 363 before Christ.
 Epictetus lived in 94.
 Epicurus, born 342, died 270 before Christ.
 Ephimethius, invent. earthen vessels, died 171 before Christ.
 Erasmus, born at Rotterdam 1467, died 1536.
 Esop, died 556 before Christ.
 Euclid died about 280 before Christ, aged 74.
 Eugene, Prince, commanded at the battle of Hochstet, Aug. 5, 1704 ; victorius at Turin, Sept. 7, 1706 ; victorious at Oudenaude 1708 ; wounded before Lille, 1708 ; defeated the Grand Vizier at Peterwarden, Aug. 5, 1716 ; died April 10, 1735, aged 73.
 Euripides died 407 before Christ, aged 77.
 Eusebius flourished 315.
 Eutropius flourished 428.
 Ezra, flourished 447 before Christ.
 Fairbrother, Mr. died at Wigan, in Lancashire, aged 138 in May, 1770.
 Fairfax, Sir Thomas, the General, died 1671.

Fancourt, Samuel, the first promoter of circulating libraries, died 1768.

Fault, or Faustus, John, claimant of the invention of printing, died 1466.

Faux, Guy, executed in Parliament-yard, Jan. 31, 1606.

Fenelon, Archbishop of Cambray, died 1716.

Fenwick, Sir John, beheaded on Tower-hill 1697.

Ferguson, James, the astronomer, died Nov. 16, 1776.

Ferrar, Bishop of St. David's, burnt at Caermarthen 1555.

Fingal, the Caledonian, died 283.

Fitzgerald, Lord Edward, executed as a rebel under martial law in Dublin, May 1798.

Fitzherbert, Sir Anth. eminent Eng. judge, died 1538.

Flamsteed, John, astronomer, born 1646, died 1719.

Fleetwood, William, Bishop of St. Asaph, antiquarian, died 1723.

Fontaine, John de la, born 1621, died 1695.

Foote, Samuel, the English Aristophanes, died Oct. 21, 1777, aged 59.

Fordyce, David, professor of philosophy, died 1755.

Forest, John, burnt in Smithfield, for denying the King's Supremacy, May 22, 1538, aged 42.

Forrestue, Sir John, died 1468.

Forester, John Rainhold, navigator, died Jan. 9, 1799, aged 70.

Foster, Dr. James, the Anabaptist, born 1696, died 1753.

Fothergill, Dr. died Dec. 26, 1780, aged 69.

Fouatane, Sir And. Eng. antiquarian, died 1753.

Fox, George, founder of the Quakers, lived in 1655.

Fox, John, martyrologist, born 1517, died 1587.

Franklin, Dr. Benjamin, died in Philadelphia, April 17, 1790, aged 84.

Galen, born at Pergamos, about 131, died 201.

Galileo, mathematical instrument maker, born in Italy, 1564, died 1642.

Garrick, David, the English Roscius, died Jan. 20, 1779, aged 62 and ten months; first appeared on the London stage 1741.

Galsborne, Geo. inventor of telescopic sights, died 1645.

Galsborne, Sir Wm. judge, who committed the Prince of Wales for insulting him on the bench, died 1413.

- Genghisikan**, the illustrious warrior, died 1790.
Geoffery, of Monmouth, British historian, died 1152.
Gibbon, Edward, historian, died Jan. 16, 1794, aged 56.
Gifford, Andrew, eminent dissenting divine, died 1784, aged 84.
Gilpin, Bernard, died, March 4, 1583, aged 65.
Gioia, Flavio, a Neapolitan, inventor of the European compass, died 1600.
Glauber, the chemist, died 1660.
Goldsmith, Dr Oliver, died April 4, 1774, aged 46.
Gordon, Lord George, died in Newgate, Nov. 1, 1793.
Gray, Thomas, the poet, died July 30, 1771, aged 54.
Grotius, Hugo, born at Delft, 1583, died 1645.
Gruter, Janus, the philologer, born 1560, died 1627.
Goicciardini, Italian historian, died 1540, aged 58.
Gunter, Rev. Edmund, mathemat. died 1726, aged 46.
Gurney, Wm. the short-hand writer, died 1770.
Gustavus, Adolphus, King of Sweden, killed in battle, Nov. 6, 1632.
Gustavus III. King of Sweden, shot at a masquerade, by a discontented officer, March 16, 1792.
Gustavus Vasa, died 1560, aged 70.
Guy, Thomas, bookseller, died Dec. 27, 1724, aged 79, and left 200,000*l.* for maintaining his hospital.
Hale, Sir Mathew, died Dec. 25, 1676, aged 66.
Haller, Dr. of Berne, Switzerland, died Dec. 1777, aged 75.
Halley, Edmund, born 1656, died 1742.
Haman, hanged by order of Ahasuerus, 509 before C.
Hancock, John, American patriot, died 1793, aged 55.
Handel, Geo. Frederick, died April 12, 1759, aged 74.
Hannibal, died 162 before Christ.
Harding, John, the cronologer, died 1461.
Harp, Frederick, died at Fish-hill, Cumberland, in Feb. 1792, aged 120.
Harris, James, the celebrated writer, died Dec. 21, 1780.
Harrison, Mr. John, inventor of the watch for discovering the longitude, died March 24, 1776, aged 84.
Harvey, Dr. William, who discovered the circulation of the blood, born 1578, died 1657, aged 79.
Hatton, Sir Christopher, made Lord Chancellor, being

- the first, who was neither priest nor lawyer, that held that office; 1538, died 1591.
- Hay, Wm. English poet and miscell. writer, died 1755.
- Haye, Sieur de la, died Feb. 2, 1774, aged 120.
- Hayes, Charles, English mathematician, died 1760.
- Hayward, Sir John, the historian, died June 1627.
- Heath, James, English chron. historian, died 1664.
- Hector, the Trojan Gen. died 1184 before Christ.
- Heinetken, Christopher, the learned prodigy of Lubeck, who was master of several languages at four years old, when he died 1725.
- Helvetius, the learned, died 1772.
- Henry, Dr. Rd. historian, died Nov. 24, 1790, aged 72.
- Henry, Matthew, English dissenting writer, died 1714.
- Herodotus, born 484, died 413 before Christ.
- Herod reigned in Judea, 55 : put his wife Mariamne to death, and his mother in law, Alexandria, 28 ; his two sons put to death by order of the Jewish council 6 years before Christ, died Nov. 25, 4 before Christ.
- Hervey, James, English divine and poet, died 1758.
- Hesiod lived 944 before Christ.
- Hetherington, Rev. Wm. died Dec. 2, 1778, who left 20,000*l.* for a fund to relieve 50 blind persons, each with 10*l.* annually.
- Hewson, Wm. eminent anatomist, died 1774.
- Hill, Sir John, the botanist, died Nov. 22, 1775.
- Hippocrates died 361 before Christ, aged 98.
- Hiram, of Tyre, died 900 before Christ.
- Hoadly, Bishop of Winchester, died 1761.
- Hoadley, Benjamin, eminent English dramatic author, died 1758.
- Hobbes, Thomas, died 1679, aged 90.
- Holt, Lord Chief Justice, died March 6, 1710, aged 67.
- Holyoake, Francis, Lexicographer, died 1653.
- Homer, born 1041, flourished 907 before Christ.
- Hood, Robtn, and Little John, noted highwayman, 1189.
- Hooke, Robert, inventor of the pendulum watches, born 1635, died 1703.
- Hooper, Bishop of Gloucester, burnt Feb. 4, 1555.
- Horace, born 65, died 8 before Christ.
- Howard, John, the philanthropist, died Jan. 20, 1790.

Dutch

Hudson, Henry, celebrated Eng. navigator, died 1611.

Hume, David, died Aug. 25, 1776, aged 65.

Hunter, Dr. Wm. the anatomist, died Oct. 16, 1793, aged 60.

Huls, John, the martyr, burnt July 15, 1415.

Huxham, Dr. died 1768.

Hyginus, Bishop of Rome, the first Pope, martyred 158.

Ignatius, Loyola, founder of the Jesuits, born 1491, died 1556, canonized by Paul V. 1609.

Irenæus, died 202, aged 82.

Isaac, Abraham's son, died 1717 before Christ, aged 180.

Isaiah, began to prophesy 786, put to death 696 before C.

Isocrates, Athen. orator, died 338 before Christ, aged 89.

Jacob, stole the blessing from Esau 1776, went into Egypt 1723, and died 1689 before Christ, aged 147.

James, St. put to death 41, made patron to Spain 796.

James, St. the less, Bishop of Jerusalem, martyred 62.

Jefferies, Lord Chief Justice, sent to the Tower by the Lord Mayor of London, Dec. 12, 1688, where he destroyed himself April 18, 1689.

Jenyns, Soame, died 1767.

Jeremiah, began to prophesy 629, foretold the Jewish captivity 607, and died 577 before Christ.

Jerome, St. born 329, died 420.

Jerome, of Prague, burnt May 30, 1416.

Jesus, son of Sirach, lived 247 before Christ.

Jesus, Christ, was born Dec. 25, in the year of the world 4005, died April 3. Vide Religious Institutions.

Joan d'Arc, or the Maid of Orleans, burnt 1451, aged 24.

Job, died 1583 before Christ, aged 180.

John, St. the Baptist, died 32.

John, St. the Evangelist, died Dec. 27, 99, aged 91.

Johnson, Dr. Samuel, the lexicographer, died Dec. 14, 1784, aged 78.

Johnson, Ben. died 1637, aged 64.

Justin, Dr. John, English divine and writer, died 1770.

Joseph, sold to the Egyptians: 1723; tempted by Potiphar's wife 1718; made Governor of Egypt 1715; died in Egypt 1695 before Christ, aged 110.

Joseph II. Emp. of Germany, poisoned March 1, 1792.

Josephus, Flavius, Jewish historian, died 93.

- Julius Cæsar**, born July 10, 100; landed at Deal, Aug. 26, 55; killed March 15, 44 before Christ.
- Justin Martyr**, flourished 140.
- Juvenal**, born 45, died 127.
- Keil, John**, astronomer, born 1671, died 1721.
- Kempis, Thomas a**, died 1471.
- Kepler, John**, born at Wirtemburgh 1571, died 1630.
- Kidder, Bishop of Bath**, and his lady, killed in bed by the fall of a stack of Chimnies, 1703.
- Kilmarnock, Lord**, and Lord Balmerino, beheaded Aug. 18, 1746.
- Kippis, Dr. Andrew**, died Oct. 3, 1795, aged 71.
- Knox, John**, the reformer, born 1515, died 1572.
- Kouli Kan**, usurped the Persian throne March 11, 1732; assassinated June 8, 1747, by his nephew.
- Lactantius**, flourished 323.
- Langhorne, Dr. John**, the writer, died Sept. 1, 1779.
- Latimer, Bishop of Worcester**, burnt at Oxford, Oct. 1555.
- Laud, Archbishop**, beheaded Jan. 10, 1645, aged 71.
- Law, Edmund**, Bishop of Carlisle, theological writer, died 1789.
- Lazarus**, raised from the dead 33, died Dec. 17, 63.
- Lee, the Rev. Mr.** who invented the stocking frame, resided at Cambridge, 1589.
- Leo I. Emperor**, ordered 200,000 books to be burnt, 476.
- Leo IX.** the first Pope that kept an army, 1054.
- Leo X.** the Pope who conferred the title of Defender of the Faith on Henry VIII. of England, died 1521.
- L'Estrange, Sir Roger**, born 1617, died Dec. 11, 1704.
- L'Enclos, Ninon de**, died 1706, aged 80.
- Llewelin**, last Prince of the Welch, defeated 1284.
- Lewis XVI.** deposed Aug. 10, 1792; beheaded Jan. 21, 1793, and his Queen beheaded Oct. 16 following.
- Linnaeus, Dr.** the botanist, died at Upsal, in Sweden, Jan. 10, 1778, aged 71.
- Locke, John**, born 1632, died Nov. 28, 1704.
- Longinus**, the orator, put to death 273.
- Lowth, Robert**, Bish. of Lond. learned writer, died 1787.
- Lucan**, born at Corduba, in Spain, Nov. 11, 37; condemned, and bled to death in a bath, April 30, 64.
- Luther, Martin**, began the reformation 1518, died 1546.

Lycurgus, the Spartan lawgiver, born 926, established his laws 884, died in Crete 872 before Christ.

Lyttleton, Lord, born 1700, married 1742, created a peer 1756, died Aug. 25, 1773.

Macaulay, Graham, Mrs. the histor. died June 23, 1791.

Machiavel, died 1530.

Mackenzie, George, born 1636, died 1691.

Magellan, Ferd. the navigator, died 1520.

Mahomet, born at Mecca, May the 5, 570; began his errors 612; the sect commenced 622; died June 18, 631.

Maittaire, Michael, eminent writer, died 1747.

Manning, Cromwell's spy, executed abroad 1655.

Mansfield, Earl of, died March 15, 1793, aged 89.

Mark, St. died in 68.

Marlborough, J. Duke of, died June 16, 1722, aged 72.

Marvel, Andrew, the patriot, born 1620, died 1678.

Mary de Medicis, Queen-mother of France, vis. Eng. 1638.

Mary, mother of Christ, died in 45, aged 60.

Mary, Queen of Scots, fled to Eng. May 16, 1568, beheaded Feb. 8, 1589, aged 44.

Maso, of Florence, inventor of engraving, died 1450.

Matthew, St. died in 65.

Matthew, of Westminster, Eng. historian, died 1379.

• **Maximilian**, the Emperor, enlisted as a Captain and subject under Henry VIII. when he invaded France, 1513.

Mayerbach, the celebrated water doctor, died Jan. 1798.

Maynwaring, Arthur, born 1668, died 1712.

Mazarine, Cardinal, died 1661, aged 59.

Mead, Dr. Richard, born 1672, died 1754.

Melancthon, Philip, died 1560, aged 63.

Metastasio, the Italian poet, died 1782, aged 84.

Methuselah, died 1656 of the world, aged 969.

Metius, James, of Antw. invent. of telescopes, died 1612.

Milton, John, born 1608, died blind 1674.

Minos, the law-giver, reigned at Crete 1492 before C.

Mirabeau, the French statesman, died 1791.

Moliere, born 1620, died 1672.

Monk, General, arbiter of England's fate 1659, made Duke of Albemarle, July 13, 1660, d. Jan. 4, 1670.

Monro, Dr. John, died Dec. 27, 1791, aged 77.

• **Montague**, Lady Mary Wortley, elegant writer, died 1762.

- Montesquieu, Charles, Secondat. Baron,** born 1689, d. 1755.
- Moses,** born 1571 ; sent the ten plagues of Egypt 1492 ; received the tables of stone on Mount Sinai, May 4, 1491 ; died 1451 before Christ.
- Movat, Mr.** a surgeon at Dumfries, in Scotland, died Feb. 21, 1776, aged 136.
- Mount, Mr. John,** of Langholm, Dumfries, Scotland, died in March 1776, aged 136.
- Muntzer, Thomas,** founder of the sect of Anabaptists, put to death 1525.
- Napier, John,** inventor of logarithms, died 1622, aged 67.
- Naylor, the Quaker,** whipped, &c. Dec. 4, 1656.
- Nero,** murdered his mother 55, died 68, aged 32.
- Newman, Thomas,** of Brislington, near Bristol, died 1542, aged 152.
- Newton, Sir Isaac,** born December 25, 1642, died March 20, 1727.
- Noah,** directed to build the Ark 1536 of the world, 120, before the flood ; died 1998 before Christ, aged 950.
- Norden, Fred.** eminent designer and engraver, died 1742.
- Occleve, Thomas,** English poet, successor to Chaucer, flourished 1420.
- Ogilby, John,** the geographer, born 1600, died 1676.
- Ogle, John,** English poet, the modern Chaucer, died 1746.
- Oldcastle, Sir John,** hanged and burnt without Temple-bar 1418 ; the first protestant martyr.
- Oldmixon, John,** born in the reign of George I.
- Origen,** died 254, aged 69.
- Orlando, Furioso,** died 1772.
- Orpheus,** the poet, flourished 576 before Christ.
- Osborn and his wife,** murdered at Tring, Hartfordshire, for supposed witchcraft, April 22, 1751.
- Offian,** flourished as a poet in 300.
- Ottoman,** first Emperor of the Turks, 1323.
- Otway, Thomas,** English poet, born 1651, died 1685.
- Ovid,** born at Sulmo 43 before Christ, died 15 after.
- Owen, Rev. Dr. John,** died 1683, aged 66.
- Par, Thomas,** d. 1635, aged 152. He lived in 10 reigns.
- Parnell, Thomas,** English divine and poet, died 1718.
- Patrick, St.** first Bishop in Ireland, died 491, aged 122.
- Patrick, Simon,** Bishop of Ely, eminent writer, died 1707.

Paul, St. converted 33, caught into the 3d Heaven 44 ; visited Athens and Corinth, 50 ; died June 29, 67.

Penn, Wm. settler of Pennsylvania, born 1644, died 1718.

Fenant, Thomas, the tourist, d. Dec. 16, 1798, ag. 73.

Peter I. of Russia, visited England 1697 ; disinherited his eldest son, Feb. 1717 ; condemned him to death June 26, 1717 ; took the title of Emp. Oct. 1721.

Petrarch, Francis, born at Arezzo 1304, died 1374.

Phoedrus, born 37 before Christ, died 31 after.

Picus, Prince of Mirandola, memorable for his extraordinary genius and memory in languages, died 1494.

Pilkington, Letitia, born 1712, died Aug. 20, 1750.

Pindar, the poet, died 434 before Christ, aged 80.

Pitt, Wm. Earl Chatham, died May 11, 1778, aged 70, and buried, at the public expense in Westminster Abbey, June 9 following.

Plato, died 384 before Christ, aged 80.

Plautus, died 184 before Christ.

Pliny, the elder, died in 79, aged 56.

Pliny, the younger, lived in 99.

Plutarch, died 119, aged 69.

Pococke, Dr. Richard, Bishop of Meath, the traveller, died 1765.

Poggins, the reviver of Greek & Latin literature, died 1459.

Pole, Cardinal, died Nov. 18, 1558, aged 58.

Polignac, Cardinal, French writer, died 1741.

Pollio, a Roman orator and poet, who occasioned the first library being opened at Rome for publick use, died in 42.

Polybius, born at Megelopolis, 205 before Christ.

Pomfret, Rev. Mr. the poet, died young 1709.

Pompey, killed in Egypt 48 before Christ, aged 59.

Pope, Alexander, died 1744, aged 55.

Prideaux, Humphrey, historian and critic, born 1646, died 1724.

Prior, Matthew, died Sept. 18, 1721, aged 56.

Prynne, Wm, born 1600 ; tried by the Star Chamber 1633 ; stood in the pillory May 1634 ; again 1637 ; took his seat in the Long Parliament, Nov. 28, 1640 ; died Oct. 24, 1669.

Ptolomy, Philo, flourished 234 before Christ.

- Puffendorf, died 1694, aged 63.
 Purcell, Henry, the celebrated musician, died 1695.
 Pythagoras, died 472 before Christ, aged 71.
 Quin, James, the comedian, died 1766, aged 73.
 Quincy, Dr. John, eminent English physician, died 1723.
 Quintilian died about 94.
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, beheaded Oct. 29, 1618, aged 65.
 Rapin, de Thoyras, English historian, died May 16, 1725, aged 64.
 Raynal, Abbé, the historian, died March 1796, aged 84.
 Read, an Alderman of London, sent as a common soldier, for refusing the king an arbitrary benevolence, 1544.
 Reaumer, M. de, the French philosopher, b. 1683, d. 1757.
 Richardson, Samuel, moral writer, died 1761, aged 72.
 Richlieu, Cardinal, died 1642, aged 57.
 Ridley, Bishop of London, burnt at Oxford, Oct. 16, 1555.
 Rittenhouse, David, ingenious mechanic, died 1798.
 Robertson, of Hopeton-hall, near Edinburgh, died 1793, aged 137.
 Rochefaucault, Duke of, died 1680, aged 68.
 Rochester, William, Earl of, died 1680, aged 32.
 Roscius, flourished 60 before Christ.
 Rousseau, John James, French poet, died July 2, 1778, aged 72.
 Row, Eliz. died Feb. 20, 1737, aged 63.
 Russell, Lord William, beheaded July 21, 1683.
 Sale, George, translator of the Alcoran, died 1736.
 Salmon, Wm. English miscell. writer, died 1685.
 Santho. Ignatius, the African, died 1780.
 Sanderfon, Robert, English antiquary, died 1741.
 Sappho, lived 603 before Christ.
 Saunderson, Dr. N. the Mathematician, d. 1739, aged 57.
 Scaliger, Julius Cesar, died 1558, aged 75.
 Scaliger, Jos. French writer, died 1609, aged 69.
 Schwartz, Berth. discoverer of gunpowder, died 1340.
 Scot, Reginald, eminent English writer, died 1599.
 Secker, Dr. Thomas, Archbish. of Canterbury, died 1768.
 Seldon, John, born 1584, died Oct 30, 1654.
 Semiramis, Queen of Assyria, died 1665 before Christ.
 Seneca, born at Corduba in I., died 64.
 Sevigne, Marchioness de, born 1626, died 1696.

Seymour, Lord, made Lord High Admiral 1542, married the widow of Henry VIII. March 1548 who died in childbed Sept. following ; he was beheaded on Tower-hill, March 20, 1549.

Shaftesbury, Earl of, born 1671, died 1713.

Shakespeare, Wm. born 1564, died April 3, 1616.

Sharp, Archbishop of St. Andrew's, born 1618, shot in his coach May, 1679.

Shaw, Dr. Thomas, English traveller, died 1751.

Shenstone, Wm. Eng. poet and miscell. writer, died 1763.

Sherard, Wm. founder of the botanic professor at Oxford, died 1728.

Sheridan, Thomas, English actor and writer, died 1788.

Sherlock, Dr. Thomas, Bishop of London, died 1761.

Shore, Jane, mistress of Edward IV. did penance 1483 ; her husband executed for coining 1496.

Short, Dr. Thomas, English physician, died 1685.

Short, James, eminent optician, died 1768.

Sidney, Algernon, beheaded Dec. 7, 1683.

Sigismund, the Emperor, visited Eng. 1419, died 1438.

Simon Magus, the first heretic, came to Rome 41.

Simonides, the poet, flourished 503 before Christ.

Simpson, Thomas, English mathematician, died 1761.

Sloane, Sir Hans, born 1660, died Jan. 11, 1753.

Smellie, Dr. William, eminent anatomist, died 1763.

Smith, Sir Thomas, historian, born 1514, died 1577.

Smith, Rev. Dr. Thomas, biographer, born 1638, died 1710.

Smollet, Dr. Tobias, the historian, died Sept. 17, 1771.

Snell, Hannah, the female soldier, had a pension settled on her, June 1730.

Socrates put to death 401 before Christ, aged 70.

Solander, Dr. naturalist, died May 13, 1782.

Solon, the lawgiver, born 549 before Christ, died aged 80.

Sophocles, died 406 before Christ, aged 90.

South, Rev. Dr. Robert, born 1633, died 1716.

Spellman, Sir Henry, the antiquarian, d. 1641, aged 80.

Spencers, father, son, and grandson ; the father was hanged at Bristol, aged 96, in Oct. 1329 ; the son was hanged at Hereford, Nov. 24 following ; the grandson was beheaded at Bristol 1400.

Spencer, the poet, 1510, died 1598.

Spinoza, Bened, born at the Hague, 1677, died aged 44.

Spooner, Mr. at Tamworth, Warwickshire, died aged 57, who weighed 569 lb. and measured 4 feet 3 inches across the shoulders, April 30, 1775.

Stackhouse, Thomas, English divine and historian, d. 1752.

Stanislaus, the abdicated King of Sweden, burnt by accident, Feb. 6, 1768, aged 89.

Stanislaus, Pomiatowsky, the last King of Poland who was deprived of his kingdom 1795, died Feb. 11, 1796, aged 65, at Petersburg.

Stanley, George, of Hamington, near Salisbury, died 1719, aged 151 years.

Steele, Sir Richard, died Sept. 1, 1729, aged 53.

Stephen the Martyr, died Sept. 26, 33.

Sternhold, Thomas, the poet, died 1541.

Sterne, Rev. Lawrence, celebrated writer, died 1768.

Stillingfleet, Bishop of Worcester, died 1699.

Strabo, flourished about 30 before Christ.

Suetonius, the historian, flourished 110, died 118.

Suidas, the learned lexicographer, lived in 1087.

Sully, Duke de, died 1641, aged 82.

Swift, Dean of St. Patrick's, d. Oct. 1745, aged 78.

Swieten, Baron Van, died June 1772.

Sydenham, Dr. Thomas, died Dec. 29, 1689, aged 65.

Syfigambis, mother of Darius, on hearing the death Alexander, starved herself, 324 before Christ.

Tacitus, lived in 70.

Tamerlane, conqueror of Asia, born 1336, died 1405.

Taffo, Orland. musician, died 1594.

Tate, Nahum, poet laureat, died 1716.

Tell, Wm. shot Griser, the Austrian Governor, 1317.

Temple, Sir Wm. died January, 1669, aged 69.

Themistocles, the Athenian Gen. d. 449 before Christ.

Theocritus, flourished 285 before Christ.

Theodore, King of Corsica, abdicated his Kingdom 1737, died in an obscure lodging in Soho, London, 1756.

Thevenot, Melchisedec, the French traveller, died 1692.

Thomson, James, died Aug. 27, 1748, aged 46.

Thomson, Mrs. near Dublin, aged 135, Oct. 1796.

- Thompson, Thomas, Eminent English watchmaker, died 1669.
- Tickel, Thomas, English poet, died 1740.
- Tice, Mr. died at Hagley, Worcestershire, Feb. 26, 1774, aged 125.
- Tiche, Brabe, of Denmark, born 1546, died 1601.
- Tillotson, Archbishop, died 1694, aged 63.
- Timoleon, of Syracuse, died 337 before Christ.
- Tindale, Dr. Matthew, born 1657, died 1733.
- Trap, Rev. Dr. Jos. born 1679, died Nov. 1747.
- Trump, Van, the Dutch Admial, killed July 29, 1653.
- Tull, Jethro, eminent in husbandry, died 1741.
- Turner, Dr. Wm. the first English botanist, about 1550.
- Tyler, Wat, the rebel, killed 1381.
- Ulysses flourished 1149 before Christ.
- Usher, James, Archbishop of Armagh, learned writer, b. 1581, died 1656.
- Van Swieten, the physician, died 1772.
- Vasco di Gama, a Portuguese, discoverer of the East Indies, 1524.
- Vernon, Admiral, died 1757, aged 73.
- Vertot, French historical writer, died 1733.
- Vesputius, Americus, a Florentine, discoverer of the West-Indies, died after 1497.
- Virgil, born at Andes, near Mantua, in 63 ; died at Brundisium, in Italy, 18 before Christ.
- Virginus, slew his daughter, that she might not fall a sacrifice to the lust of Appius Claudius, 446 before C.
- Voltaire, M. de, died 1778, aged 85.
- Wakeley, William, of Shiffnal, died 1714, aged 124.
- Walker, the Rev. Mr. defended Londonderry, 1689; slain at the battle of the Boyne, 1690.
- Wallace, Sir William, eminent Scotch General, died 1304.
- Waller, Edmund, English poet, died 1687, aged 81.
- Walpole, Sir Robert, Earl of Oxford, born 1674 ; committed to the Tower, 1712 ; took his seat in the House of Peers, Feb. 11, 1742 ; died 1745.
- Walton, Brion, Bishop of Chester, editor of the Polyglot Bible, died 1661.
- Warburton, Bishop of Gloucester, died June 11, 1799.
- Washington, Gen. George, died Dec. 14, 1799, aged 68.

- Watts, Dr. Isaac, born 1673, died 1748.
- Wedgewood, Josiah, the celebrated potter, died Jan. 3, 1795.
- West, Mr. Gilbert, died 1756.
- Westley, Rev. Mr. John, died March 28, 1791, aged 88.
- Wharton, John, English divine and historian, died 1694.
- Wheelock, Eleazer, founder of Dart. College, died 1779.
- Whiston, Wm. the astronomer, born 1667, died 1752.
- Whitefield, Rev. George, preached in the fields, 1735; excluded the church, May 10, 1739; d. 1770; aged 56.
- Whittington, Sir Richard, Lord Mayor of London, 1377.
- Wht, Dr. Robert, Eng. physician and writer, died 1766.
- Wickliffe, opposed the Pope's supremacy, 1377; died 1385; and 40 years after burnt for being a heretic.
- Wilkes, John, the patriot, died Dec. 26, 1797, aged 70.
- Willoughby, Francis, English natural historian, died 1672.
- Wilson, Arthur, the historian, born 1596, died 1652.
- Wilson, Samuel, of London, bequeathed 20,000*l.* to be lent out in small sums to industrious tradesmen, 1771.
- Winchelsea, Ann Kingsmill, Countess of, English poetess, died 1720.
- Wit, John de, murdered at the Hague, Aug. 10, 1672.
- Wolfe, General, killed before Quebec, Sept. 13, 1759, aged 33.
- Wollaston, Rev. William, born 1652, died 1724.
- Wolsey, Minister to Henry VIII. 1513, Archbishop of York 1514, Cardinal 1515, Chancellor Dec. 24 following, Legate 1518, resigned the seals October 18, 1529, stripped of all his possessions, and died Nov. 18, 1530, aged 59.
- Wren, Sir Christopher, died 1725, aged 91.
- Wyat, Sir Thomas, the poet, died 1541, aged 37.
- Wykeham, Wm. of, eminent English prelate, Bishop of Winchester, died 1404.
- Xavier, Sir Francis, died 1552.
- Xenophon, died at Corinth 359 before Christ, aged 90.
- Ximenes, Cardinal de, died 1517, aged 80.
- Yalden, Thomas, English divine and poet, died 1736.
- Yates, Mrs. Mary, of Shiffnall, died Aug. 1776, aged 128.
- Young, Dr. Edward, died 1765, aged 81.

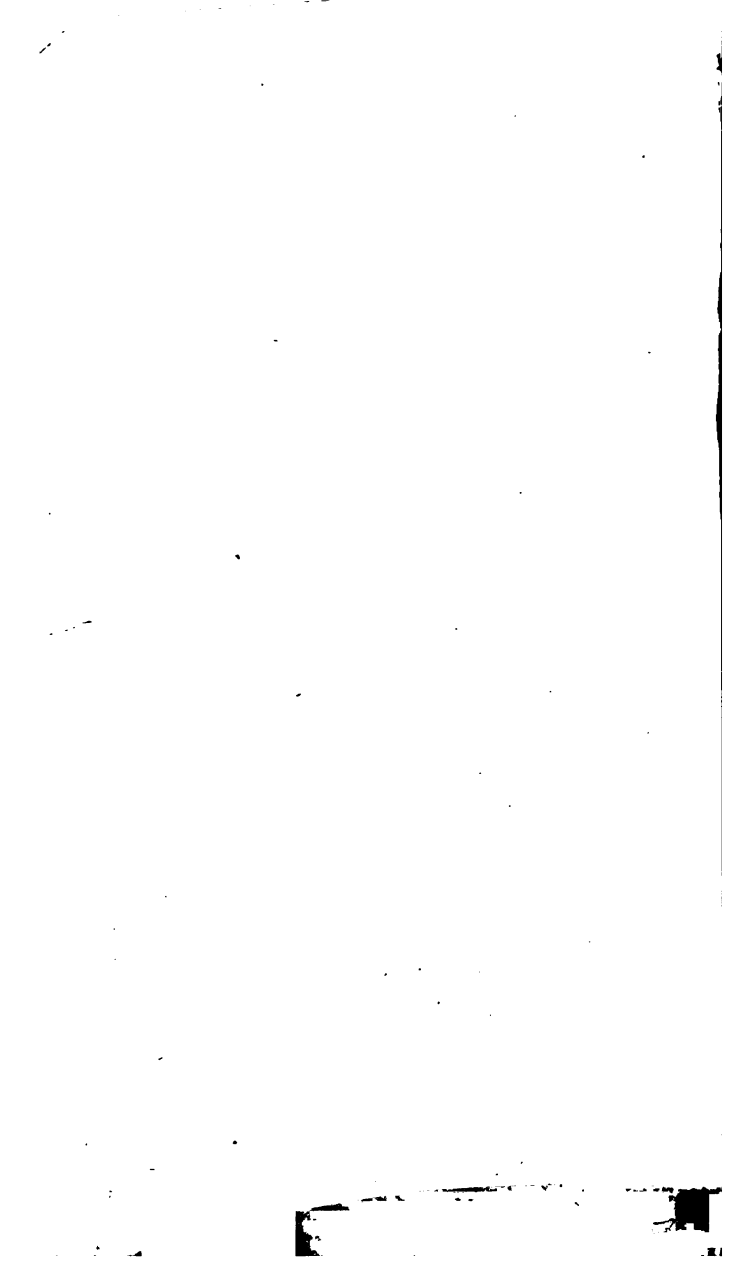
Zeno died 264 before Christ, aged 98.

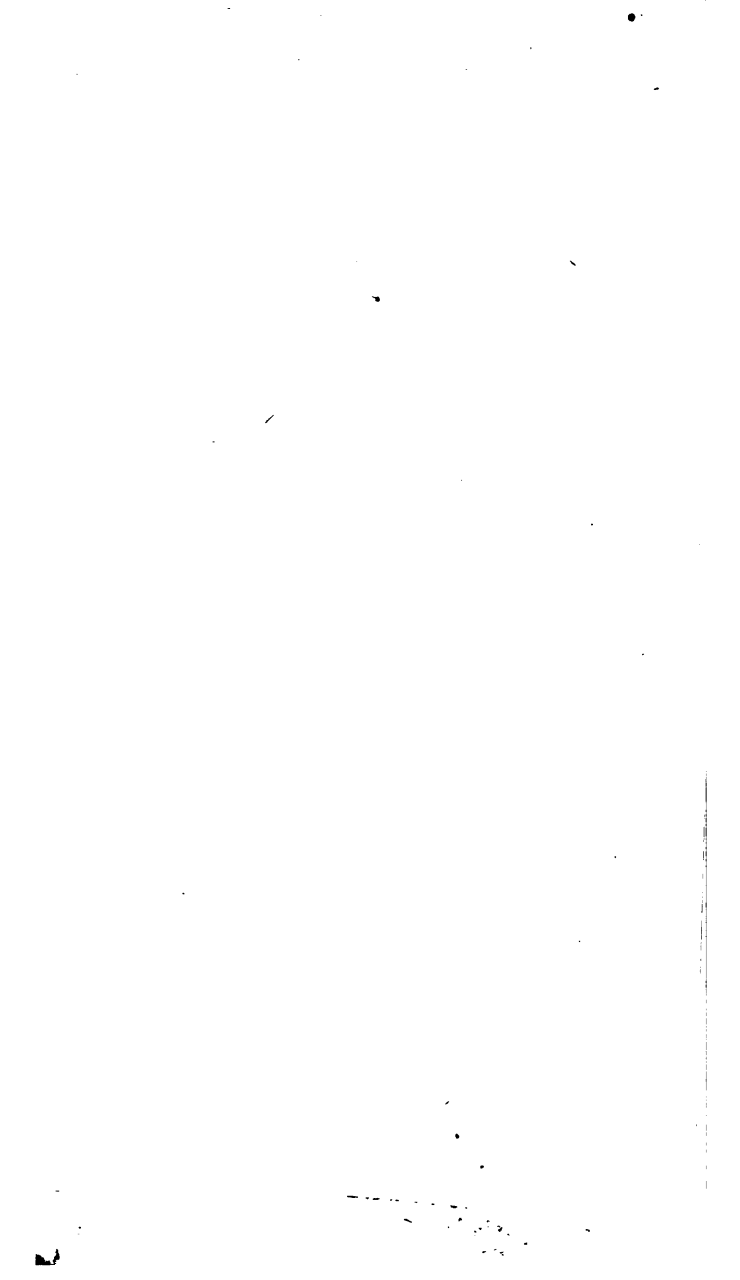
Zinzendorff, Count Nicholas Lewis, founder of the Hēr-
rinhunters, or Moravians, died June 9, 1760, aged 70.

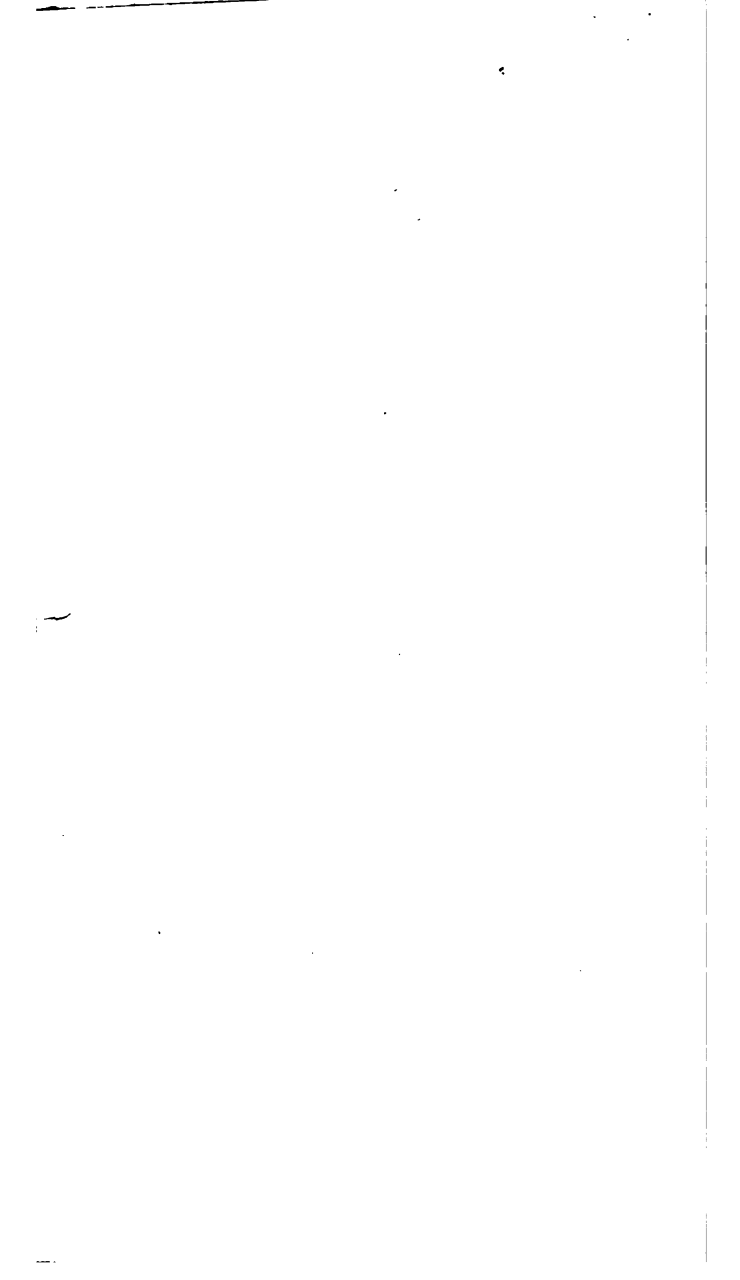
Zoroaster, flourished 1066.

Zuinglius, killed in the Swiss war 1531, aged 44.

FINIS.









THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

**This book is under no circumstances to
be taken from the Building**

[illegible]

MAR 24 1965

